

# Package ‘scCustomize’

December 11, 2025

**Type** Package

**Title** Custom Visualizations & Functions for Streamlined Analyses of Single Cell Sequencing

**Description** Collection of functions created and/or curated to aid in the visualization and analysis of single-cell data using 'R'. 'scCustomize' aims to provide 1) Customized visualizations for aid in ease of use and to create more aesthetic and functional visuals. 2) Improve speed/reproducibility of common tasks/pieces of code in scRNA-seq analysis with a single or group of functions. For citation please use: Marsh SE (2021) ``Custom Visualizations & Functions for Streamlined Analyses of Single Cell Sequencing" <doi:10.5281/zenodo.5706430> RRID:SCR\_024675.

**Version** 3.2.4

**Date** 2025-12-10

**URL** <https://github.com/samuel-marsh/scCustomize>,  
<https://samuel-marsh.github.io/scCustomize/>,  
<https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.5706431>

**BugReports** <https://github.com/samuel-marsh/scCustomize/issues>

**Depends** R (>= 4.0.0), Seurat (>= 4.3.0.1)

**Imports** circlize, cli (>= 3.2.0), cowplot, data.table, dplyr, forcats, ggbeeswarm, ggplot2, ggprism, ggrastr, ggrepel, glue, grDevices, grid, janitor, lifecycle, magrittr, Matrix (>= 1.5.0), mcprogress, methods, paletteer, patchwork, pbapply, purrr, rlang (>= 1.1.3), scales, scattermore (>= 1.2), SeuratObject (>= 5.0.0), stats, stringi, stringr, tibble, tidy

**Suggests** BiocFileCache, ComplexHeatmap, dittoSeq, DropletUtils, ggpubr, hdf5r, knitr, Nebulosa, remotes, reticulate, rliqer, rmarkdown, scuttle, tidyselect, qs, viridis

**License** GPL (>= 3)

**Encoding** UTF-8

**LazyData** true

**RoxygenNote** 7.3.3

**NeedsCompilation** no

**Author** Samuel Marsh [aut, cre] (ORCID:

<<https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3012-6945>>),

Ming Tang [ctb],

Velina Kozareva [ctb],

Lucas Graybuck [ctb],

Zoe Clarke [ctb] (ORCID: <<https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0336-8049>>)

**Maintainer** Samuel Marsh <[sccustomize@gmail.com](mailto:sccustomize@gmail.com)>

**Repository** CRAN

**Date/Publication** 2025-12-11 10:10:02 UTC

## Contents

Add_Alt_Feature_ID . . . . .	6
Add_CellBender_Diff . . . . .	7
Add_Cell_Complexity . . . . .	8
Add_Cell_QC_Metrics . . . . .	9
Add_Hemo . . . . .	13
Add_MALAT1_Threshold . . . . .	15
Add_Mito_Ribo . . . . .	18
Add_Pct_Diff . . . . .	20
Add_Sample_Meta . . . . .	21
Add_Top_Gene_Pct . . . . .	22
as.anndata . . . . .	24
as.LIGER . . . . .	26
as.Seurat.liger . . . . .	28
Barcode_Plot . . . . .	29
Blank_Theme . . . . .	30
Case_Check . . . . .	31
CellBender_Diff_Plot . . . . .	32
CellBender_Feature_Diff . . . . .	34
Cells.liger . . . . .	35
Cells_by_Identities_LIGER . . . . .	35
Cells_per_Sample . . . . .	36
Cell_Highlight_Plot . . . . .	37
Change_Delim_All . . . . .	38
Change_Delim_Prefix . . . . .	39
Change_Delim_Suffix . . . . .	40
CheckMatrix_scCustom . . . . .	40
Clustered_DotPlot . . . . .	41
Cluster_Highlight_Plot . . . . .	45
Cluster_Stats_All_Samples . . . . .	47
ColorBlind_Pal . . . . .	48
Convert_Assay . . . . .	48
Copy_From_GCP . . . . .	49
Copy_To_GCP . . . . .	50

Create_10X_H5 . . . . .	50
Create_CellBender_Merged_Seurat . . . . .	51
Create_Cluster_Annotation_File . . . . .	52
Dark2_Pal . . . . .	53
Dataset_Size_LIGER . . . . .	53
DimPlot_All_Samples . . . . .	54
DimPlot_LIGER . . . . .	55
DimPlot_scCustom . . . . .	58
DiscretePalette_scCustomize . . . . .	60
DotPlot_scCustom . . . . .	61
ElbowPlot_scCustom . . . . .	63
Embeddings.liger . . . . .	64
ensembl_exAM_list . . . . .	65
ensembl_hemo_id . . . . .	65
ensembl_ieg_list . . . . .	66
ensembl_lncRNA_id . . . . .	67
ensembl_malat1_list . . . . .	67
ensembl_mito_id . . . . .	68
ensembl_ribo_id . . . . .	68
exAM_gene_list . . . . .	69
exAM_Scoring . . . . .	70
Extract_Modality . . . . .	71
Extract_Sample_Meta . . . . .	72
Extract_Top_Markers . . . . .	73
Factor_Cor_Plot . . . . .	74
FeaturePlot_DualAssay . . . . .	76
FeaturePlot_scCustom . . . . .	77
Features.liger . . . . .	79
FeatureScatter_scCustom . . . . .	80
Feature_Present . . . . .	82
Fetch_Meta . . . . .	83
Find_Factor_Cor . . . . .	84
Get_Reference_LIGER . . . . .	84
Hue_Pal . . . . .	85
Idents.liger . . . . .	86
ieg_gene_list . . . . .	87
Iterate_Barcode_Rank_Plot . . . . .	87
Iterate_Cluster_Highlight_Plot . . . . .	89
Iterate_DimPlot_bySample . . . . .	90
Iterate_FeaturePlot_scCustom . . . . .	92
Iterate_Meta_Highlight_Plot . . . . .	94
Iterate_PC>Loading_Plots . . . . .	95
Iterate_Plot_Density_Custom . . . . .	96
Iterate_Plot_Density_Joint . . . . .	98
Iterate_VlnPlot_scCustom . . . . .	99
JCO_Four . . . . .	101
lncRNA_gene_list . . . . .	102
MAD_Stats . . . . .	102

Map_New_Meta . . . . .	103
Median_Stats . . . . .	104
Merge_Seurat_List . . . . .	105
Merge_Sparse_Data_All . . . . .	106
Merge_Sparse_Multimodal_All . . . . .	107
Meta_Highlight_Plot . . . . .	108
Meta_Numeric . . . . .	109
Meta_Present . . . . .	110
Meta_Remove_Seurat . . . . .	111
Move_Legend . . . . .	112
msigdb_qc_ensembl_list . . . . .	112
msigdb_qc_gene_list . . . . .	114
NavyAndOrange . . . . .	115
PalettePlot . . . . .	116
PC_Plotting . . . . .	116
Percent_Expressing . . . . .	117
plotFactors_scCustom . . . . .	118
Plot_Cells_per_Sample . . . . .	120
Plot_Density_Custom . . . . .	121
Plot_Density_Joint_Only . . . . .	123
Plot_Median_Genes . . . . .	124
Plot_Median_Mito . . . . .	125
Plot_Median_Other . . . . .	126
Plot_Median_UMIs . . . . .	127
Proportion_Plot . . . . .	128
Proportion_Plot_per_Sample . . . . .	130
Pull_Cluster_Annotation . . . . .	131
Pull_Directory_List . . . . .	132
QC_Histogram . . . . .	132
QC_Plots_Combined_Vln . . . . .	133
QC_Plots_Complexity . . . . .	135
QC_Plots_Feature . . . . .	137
QC_Plots_Genes . . . . .	139
QC_Plots_Mito . . . . .	140
QC_Plots_UMIs . . . . .	142
QC_Plot_GenevsFeature . . . . .	144
QC_Plot_UMIvsFeature . . . . .	145
QC_Plot_UMIvsGene . . . . .	147
Random_Cells_Downsampling . . . . .	149
Read10X_GEO . . . . .	150
Read10X_h5_GEO . . . . .	152
Read10X_h5_Multi_Directory . . . . .	153
Read10X_Multi_Directory . . . . .	155
Read_Add_cNMF . . . . .	156
Read_CellBender_h5_Mat . . . . .	157
Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_Directory . . . . .	158
Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_File . . . . .	160
Read_GEO_Delim . . . . .	161

Read\_Metrics\_10X . . . . . 163

Read\_Metrics\_CellBender . . . . . 164

Reduction>Loading\_Present . . . . . 164

ReFilter\_SeuratObject . . . . . 165

Rename\_Clusters . . . . . 167

Replace\_Suffix . . . . . 168

scCustomize\_Palette . . . . . 169

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Alignment\_Combined . . . . . 170

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Antisense . . . . . 171

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Basic\_Combined . . . . . 172

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Exonic . . . . . 173

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genes . . . . . 174

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genome . . . . . 175

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intergenic . . . . . 176

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intronic . . . . . 177

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Number\_Cells . . . . . 178

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_in\_Cells . . . . . 179

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_per\_Cell . . . . . 180

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Saturation . . . . . 181

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Total\_Genes . . . . . 182

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Transcriptome . . . . . 183

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_UMIs . . . . . 184

seq\_zeros . . . . . 185

Setup\_scRNAseq\_Project . . . . . 186

Single\_Color\_Palette . . . . . 187

SpatialDimPlot\_scCustom . . . . . 187

Split\_Layers . . . . . 189

Split\_Vector . . . . . 190

Stacked\_VlnPlot . . . . . 191

Store\_Misc\_Info\_Seurat . . . . . 193

Store\_Palette\_Seurat . . . . . 194

Subset\_LIGER . . . . . 195

theme\_ggprism\_mod . . . . . 196

Top\_Genes\_Factor . . . . . 197

UnRotate\_X . . . . . 198

Updated\_HGNC\_Symbols . . . . . 199

Updated\_MGI\_Symbols . . . . . 200

VariableFeaturePlot\_scCustom . . . . . 201

Variable\_Features\_ALL\_LIGER . . . . . 202

viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high . . . . . 203

VlnPlot\_scCustom . . . . . 204

WhichCells.liger . . . . . 206

---

Add\_Alt\_Feature\_ID      *Add Alternative Feature IDs*

---

### Description

Add alternative feature ids data.frame to the misc slot of Seurat object.

### Usage

```
Add_Alt_Feature_ID(
  seurat_object,
  features_tsv_file = NULL,
  hdf5_file = NULL,
  assay = NULL,
  data_name = "feature_id_mapping_table",
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

seurat_object	object name.
features_tsv_file	output file from Cell Ranger used for creation of Seurat object. (Either provide this of hdf5_file)
hdf5_file	output file from Cell Ranger used for creation of Seurat object. (Either provide this of features_tsv_file)
assay	name of assay(s) to add the alternative features to. Can specify "all" to add to all assays.
data_name	name to use for data.frame when stored in @misc slot.
overwrite	logical, whether to overwrite item with the same data_name in the @misc slot of object (default is FALSE).

### Value

Seurat Object with new entries in the obj@misc slot.

### Examples

```
## Not run:
# Using features.tsv.gz file
# Either file from filtered or raw outputs can be used as they are identical.
obj <- Add_Alt_Feature_ID(seurat_object = obj,
  features_tsv = "sample01/outs/filtered_feature_bc_matrix/features.tsv.gz", assay = "RNA")

#' # Using hdf5 file
# Either filtered_feature_bc or raw_feature_bc can be used as the features slot is identical
# Though it is faster to load filtered_feature_bc file due to droplet filtering
```

```
obj <- Add_Alt_Feature_ID(seurat_object = obj,  
hdf5_file = "sample01/outs/outs/filtered_feature_bc_matrix.h5", assay = "RNA")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_CellBender\_Diff     *Calculate and add differences post-cell bender analysis*

---

### Description

Calculate the difference in features and UMIs per cell when both cell bender and raw assays are present.

### Usage

```
Add_CellBender_Diff(seurat_object, raw_assay_name, cell_bender_assay_name)
```

### Arguments

seurat\_object    object name.  
raw\_assay\_name   name of the assay containing the raw data.  
cell\_bender\_assay\_name  
                  name of the assay containing the Cell Bender'ed data.

### Value

Seurat object with 2 new columns in the meta.data slot.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
object <- Add_CellBender_Diff(seurat_object = obj, raw_assay_name = "RAW",  
cell_bender_assay_name = "RNA")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_Cell\_Complexity    *Add Cell Complexity*

---

### Description

Add measure of cell complexity/novelty (log10GenesPerUMI) for data QC.

### Usage

```
Add_Cell_Complexity(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
Add_Cell_Complexity(
  object,
  meta_col_name = "log10GenesPerUMI",
  overwrite = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Add_Cell_Complexity(
  object,
  meta_col_name = "log10GenesPerUMI",
  assay = "RNA",
  overwrite = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

object	Seurat or LIGER object
...	Arguments passed to other methods
meta_col_name	name to use for new meta data column. Default is "log10GenesPerUMI".
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing an meta.data column. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if column with name provided to meta_col_name is present in meta.data slot.
assay	assay to use in calculation. Default is "RNA". <i>Note</i> This should only be changed if storing corrected and uncorrected assays in same object (e.g. outputs of both Cell Ranger and Cell Bender).

### Value

An object of the same class as object with columns added to object meta data.



**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# Liger
liger_object <- Add_Cell_Complexity(object = liger_object)

## End(Not run)

# Seurat
library(Seurat)
pbmc_small <- Add_Cell_Complexity(object = pbmc_small)
```

---

Add\_Cell\_QC\_Metrics    *Add Multiple Cell Quality Control Values with Single Function*

---

**Description**

Add Mito/Ribo %, Cell Complexity (log10GenesPerUMI), Top Gene Percent with single function call to Seurat or liger objects.

**Usage**

```
Add_Cell_QC_Metrics(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
Add_Cell_QC_Metrics(
  object,
  add_mito_ribo = TRUE,
  add_complexity = TRUE,
  add_top_pct = TRUE,
  add_MSigDB = TRUE,
  add_IEG = TRUE,
  add_hemo = TRUE,
  add_lncRNA = TRUE,
  add_cell_cycle = TRUE,
  species,
  mito_name = "percent_mito",
  ribo_name = "percent_ribo",
  mito_ribo_name = "percent_mito_ribo",
  complexity_name = "log10GenesPerUMI",
  top_pct_name = NULL,
  oxphos_name = "percent_oxphos",
  apop_name = "percent_apop",
  dna_repair_name = "percent_dna_repair",
  ieg_name = "percent_ieg",
  hemo_name = "percent_hemo",
  lncRNA_name = "percent_lncRNA",
```

```
    mito_pattern = NULL,  
    ribo_pattern = NULL,  
    hemo_pattern = NULL,  
    mito_features = NULL,  
    ribo_features = NULL,  
    hemo_features = NULL,  
    ensembl_ids = FALSE,  
    num_top_genes = 50,  
    assay = NULL,  
    list_species_names = FALSE,  
    overwrite = FALSE,  
    ...  
)  
  
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'  
Add_Cell_QC_Metrics(  
  object,  
  species,  
  add_mito_ribo = TRUE,  
  add_complexity = TRUE,  
  add_top_pct = TRUE,  
  add_MSigDB = TRUE,  
  add_IEG = TRUE,  
  add_IEG_module_score = TRUE,  
  add_hemo = TRUE,  
  add_lncRNA = TRUE,  
  add_cell_cycle = TRUE,  
  mito_name = "percent_mito",  
  ribo_name = "percent_ribo",  
  mito_ribo_name = "percent_mito_ribo",  
  complexity_name = "log10GenesPerUMI",  
  top_pct_name = NULL,  
  oxphos_name = "percent_oxphos",  
  apop_name = "percent_apop",  
  dna_repair_name = "percent_dna_repair",  
  ieg_name = "percent_ieg",  
  ieg_module_name = "ieg_score",  
  hemo_name = "percent_hemo",  
  lncRNA_name = "percent_lncRNA",  
  mito_pattern = NULL,  
  ribo_pattern = NULL,  
  hemo_pattern = NULL,  
  mito_features = NULL,  
  ribo_features = NULL,  
  hemo_features = NULL,  
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,  
  num_top_genes = 50,  
  assay = NULL,
```

```

    list_species_names = FALSE,
    overwrite = FALSE,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>object</code>	Seurat or LIGER object
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed to other methods
<code>add_mito_ribo</code>	logical, whether to add percentage of counts belonging to mitochondrial/ribosomal genes to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_complexity</code>	logical, whether to add Cell Complexity to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_top_pct</code>	logical, whether to add Top Gene Percentages to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_MSigDB</code>	logical, whether to add percentages of counts belonging to genes from of mSigDB hallmark gene lists: "HALLMARK_OXIDATIVE_PHOSPHORYLATION", "HALLMARK_APOPTOSIS", and "HALLMARK_DNA_REPAIR" to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_IEG</code>	logical, whether to add percentage of counts belonging to IEG genes to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_hemo</code>	logical, whether to add percentage of counts belonging to hemoglobin genes to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_lncRNA</code>	logical, whether to add percentage of counts belonging to lncRNA genes to object (Default is TRUE).
<code>add_cell_cycle</code>	logical, whether to add cell cycle scores and phase based on <a href="#">CellCycleScoring</a> . Only applicable if <code>species = "human"</code> . (Default is TRUE).
<code>species</code>	Species of origin for given Seurat Object. If mouse, human, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, or chicken (name or abbreviation) are provided the function will automatically generate patterns and features.
<code>mito_name</code>	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent mitochondrial counts. Default is "percent_mito".
<code>ribo_name</code>	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent ribosomal counts. Default is "percent_ribo".
<code>mito_ribo_name</code>	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent mitochondrial+ribosomal counts. Default is "percent_mito_ribo".
<code>complexity_name</code>	name to use for new meta data column for Add_Cell_Complexity. Default is "log10GenesPerUMI".
<code>top_pct_name</code>	name to use for new meta data column for Add_Top_Gene_Pct. Default is "percent_topXX", where XX is equal to the value provided to <code>num_top_genes</code> .
<code>oxphos_name</code>	name to use for new meta data column for percentage of MSigDB oxidative phosphorylation counts. Default is "percent_oxphos".
<code>apop_name</code>	name to use for new meta data column for percentage of MSigDB apoptosis counts. Default is "percent_apop".

dna_repair_name	name to use for new meta data column for percentage of MSigDB DNA repair counts. Default is "percent_dna_repair"..
ieg_name	name to use for new meta data column for percentage of IEG counts. Default is "percent_ieg".
hemo_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent hemoglobin counts. Default is "percent_mito".
lncRNA_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent lncRNA counts. Default is "percent_lncRNA".
mito_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for mitochondrial genes (will set automatically if species is mouse or human; marmoset features list saved separately).
ribo_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for ribosomal genes (will set automatically if species is in default list).
hemo_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for hemoglobin genes (will set automatically if species is in default list).
mito_features	A list of mitochondrial gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern. Will override regex pattern if both are present (including default saved regex patterns).
ribo_features	A list of ribosomal gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern. Will override regex pattern if both are present (including default saved regex patterns).
hemo_features	A list of hemoglobin gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern. Will override regex pattern if both are present (including default saved regex patterns).
ensembl_ids	logical, whether feature names in the object are gene names or ensembl IDs (default is FALSE; set TRUE if feature names are ensembl IDs).
num_top_genes	An integer vector specifying the size(s) of the top set of high-abundance genes. Used to compute the percentage of library size occupied by the most highly expressed genes in each cell.
assay	assay to use in calculation. Default is "RNA". <i>Note</i> This should only be changed if storing corrected and uncorrected assays in same object (e.g. outputs of both Cell Ranger and Cell Bender).
list_species_names	returns list of all accepted values to use for default species names which contain internal regex/feature lists (human, mouse, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, and chicken). Default is FALSE.
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing an meta.data column. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if column with name provided to meta_col_name is present in meta.data slot.
add_IEG_module_score	logical, whether to add module score belonging to IEG genes to object (Default is TRUE).
ieg_module_name	name to use for new meta data column for module score of IEGs. Default is "ieg_score".

**Value**

A liger Object

A Seurat Object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
obj <- Add_Cell_QC_Metrics(object = obj, species = "Human")

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
obj <- Add_Cell_QC_Metrics(object = obj, species = "Human")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_Hemo

*Add Hemoglobin percentages*

---

**Description**

Add hemoglobin percentages to meta.data slot of Seurat Object or cell.data/cellMeta slot of Liger object

**Usage**

```
Add_Hemo(object, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
Add_Hemo(
  object,
  species,
  hemo_name = "percent_hemo",
  hemo_pattern = NULL,
  hemo_features = NULL,
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  list_species_names = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Add_Hemo(
  object,
  species,
  hemo_name = "percent_hemo",
```

```

    hemo_pattern = NULL,
    hemo_features = NULL,
    ensembl_ids = FALSE,
    assay = NULL,
    overwrite = FALSE,
    list_species_names = FALSE,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

object	Seurat or LIGER object
...	Arguments passed to other methods
species	Species of origin for given Seurat Object. If mouse, human, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, or chicken (name or abbreviation) are provided the function will automatically generate hemo_pattern values.
hemo_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent hemoglobin counts. Default is "percent_hemo".
hemo_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for hemoglobin genes (will set automatically if species is mouse or human; marmoset features list saved separately).
hemo_features	A list of hemoglobin gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern.
ensembl_ids	logical, whether feature names in the object are gene names or ensembl IDs (default is FALSE; set TRUE if feature names are ensembl IDs).
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing meta.data columns. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if columns with any one of the names provided to hemo_name is present in meta.data slot.
list_species_names	returns list of all accepted values to use for default species names which contain internal regex/feature lists (human, mouse, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, and rhesus macaque). Default is FALSE.
assay	Assay to use (default is the current object default assay).

### Value

An object of the same class as object with columns added to object meta data.

### Examples

```

## Not run:
# Liger
liger_object <- Add_Hemo(object = liger_object, species = "human")

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
# Seurat
seurat_object <- Add_Hemo(object = seurat_object, species = "human")

```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_MALAT1\_Threshold *Add MALAT1 QC Threshold*

---

## Description

Adds TRUE/FALSE values to each cell based on calculation of MALAT1 threshold. This function incorporates a threshold calculation and procedure as described in Clarke & Bader (2024). bioRxiv [doi:10.1101/2024.07.14.603469](https://doi.org/10.1101/2024.07.14.603469). Please cite this preprint whenever using this function.

## Usage

```
Add_MALAT1_Threshold(object, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
```

```
Add_MALAT1_Threshold(  
  object,  
  species,  
  sample_col = NULL,  
  malat1_threshold_name = NULL,  
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,  
  assay = NULL,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  print_plots = NULL,  
  save_plots = FALSE,  
  save_plot_path = NULL,  
  save_plot_name = NULL,  
  plot_width = 11,  
  plot_height = 8,  
  whole_object = FALSE,  
  homolog_name = NULL,  
  bw = 0.1,  
  lwd = 2,  
  breaks = 100,  
  chosen_min = 1,  
  smooth = 1,  
  abs_min = 0.3,  
  rough_max = 2,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

object	Seurat or LIGER object
--------	------------------------

...	Arguments passed to other methods
species	Species of origin for given Seurat Object. Only accepted species are: mouse, human (name or abbreviation).
sample_col	column name in meta.data that contains sample ID information.
malat1_threshold_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent IEG gene counts. Default is set dependent on species gene symbol.
ensembl_ids	logical, whether feature names in the object are gene names or ensembl IDs (default is FALSE; set TRUE if feature names are ensembl IDs).
assay	Assay to use (default is the current object default assay).
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing meta.data columns. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if columns with the name provided to malat1_threshold_name is present in meta.data slot.
print_plots	logical, should plots be printed to output when running function (default is NULL). Will automatically set to FALSE if performing across samples or TRUE if performing across whole object.
save_plots	logical, whether or not to save plots to pdf (default is FALSE).
save_plot_path	path to save location for plots (default is NULL; current working directory).
save_plot_name	name for pdf file containing plots.
plot_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is 11.
plot_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is 8.
whole_object	logical, whether to perform calculation on whole object (default is FALSE). Should be only be run if object contains single sample.
homolog_name	feature name for MALAT1 homolog in non-default species (if annotated).
bw	The "bandwidth" value when plotting the density function to the MALAT1 distribution; default is bw = 0.1, but this parameter should be lowered (e.g. to 0.01) if you run the function and the line that's produced doesn't look like it's tracing the shape of the histogram accurately (this will make the line less "stiff" and more fitted to the data)
lwd	The "line width" fed to the abline function which adds the vertical red line to the output plots; default is 2, and it can be increased or decreased depending on the user's plotting preferences
breaks	The number of bins used for plotting the histogram of normalized MALAT1 values; default is 100
chosen_min	The minimum MALAT1 value cutoff above which a MALAT1 peak in the density function should be found. This value is necessary to determine which peak in the density function fitted to the MALAT1 distribution is likely representative of what we would expect to find in real cells. This is because some samples may have large numbers of cells or empty droplets with lower than expected normalized MALAT1 values, and therefore have a peak close to or at zero. Ideally, "chosen_min" would be manually chosen after looking at a histogram of MALAT1 values, and be the normalized MALAT1 value that cuts out all of the



cells that look like they stray from the expected distribution (a unimodal distribution above zero). The default value is 1 as this works well in many test cases, but different types of normalization may make the user want to change this parameter (e.g. Seurat's original normalization function generates different results to their SCT function) which may change the MALAT1 distribution). Increase or decrease `chosen_min` depending on where your MALAT1 peak is located.

<code>smooth</code>	The "smoothing parameter" fed into the "smooth.spline" function that adjusts the trade-off between the smoothness of the line fitting the histogram, and how closely it fits the histogram; the default is 1, and can be lowered if it looks like the line is underfitting the data, and raised in the case of overfitting. The ideal scenario is for the line to trace the histogram in a way where the only inflection point(s) are between major peaks, e.g. separating the group of poor-quality cells or empty droplets with lower normalized MALAT1 expression from higher-quality cells with higher normalized MALAT1 expression.
<code>abs_min</code>	The absolute lowest value allowed as the MALAT1 threshold. This parameter increases the robustness of the function if working with an outlier data distribution (e.g. an entire sample is poor quality so there is a unimodal MALAT1 distribution that is very low but above zero, but also many values close to zero) and prevents a resulting MALAT1 threshold of zero. In the case where a calculated MALAT1 value is zero, the function will return 0.3 by default.
<code>rough_max</code>	A rough value for the location of a MALAT1 peak if a peak is not found. This is possible if there are so few cells with higher MALAT1 values, that a distribution fitted to the data finds no local maxima. For example, if a sample only has poor-quality cells such that all have near-zero MALAT1 expression, the fitted function may look similar to a positive quadratic function which has no local maxima. In this case, the function searches for the closest MALAT1 value to the default value, 2, to use in place of a real local maximum.

### Value

Seurat object with added meta.data column

### Author(s)

Zoe Clark (original function and manuscript) & Samuel Marsh (wrappers and updates for inclusion in package)

### References

This function incorporates a threshold calculation and procedure as described in Clarke & Bader (2024). bioRxiv [doi:10.1101/2024.07.14.603469](https://doi.org/10.1101/2024.07.14.603469). Please cite this preprint whenever using this function.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
object <- Add_MALAT1_Threshold(object = object, species = "Human")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

`Add_Mito_Ribo`*Add Mito and Ribo percentages*

---

**Description**

Add Mito, Ribo, & Mito+Ribo percentages to meta.data slot of Seurat Object or cell.data slot of Liger object

**Usage**

```
Add_Mito_Ribo(object, ...)  
  
## S3 method for class 'liger'  
Add_Mito_Ribo(  
  object,  
  species,  
  mito_name = "percent_mito",  
  ribo_name = "percent_ribo",  
  mito_ribo_name = "percent_mito_ribo",  
  mito_pattern = NULL,  
  ribo_pattern = NULL,  
  mito_features = NULL,  
  ribo_features = NULL,  
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  list_species_names = FALSE,  
  ...  
)  
  
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'  
Add_Mito_Ribo(  
  object,  
  species,  
  mito_name = "percent_mito",  
  ribo_name = "percent_ribo",  
  mito_ribo_name = "percent_mito_ribo",  
  mito_pattern = NULL,  
  ribo_pattern = NULL,  
  mito_features = NULL,  
  ribo_features = NULL,  
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,  
  assay = NULL,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  list_species_names = FALSE,  
  species_prefix = NULL,
```

```
    ...
  )
```

### Arguments

object	Seurat or LIGER object
...	Arguments passed to other methods
species	Species of origin for given Seurat Object. If mouse, human, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, or chicken (name or abbreviation) are provided the function will automatically generate mito_pattern and ribo_pattern values.
mito_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent mitochondrial counts. Default is "percent_mito".
ribo_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent ribosomal counts. Default is "percent_ribo".
mito_ribo_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing percent mitochondrial+ribosomal counts. Default is "percent_mito_ribo".
mito_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for mitochondrial genes (will set automatically if species is mouse, human, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, or chicken; marmoset features list saved separately).
ribo_pattern	A regex pattern to match features against for ribosomal genes (will set automatically if species is mouse, human, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, or chicken).
mito_features	A list of mitochondrial gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern. Will override regex pattern if both are present (including default saved regex patterns).
ribo_features	A list of ribosomal gene names to be used instead of using regex pattern. Will override regex pattern if both are present (including default saved regex patterns).
ensembl_ids	logical, whether feature names in the object are gene names or ensembl IDs (default is FALSE; set TRUE if feature names are ensembl IDs).
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing meta.data columns. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if columns with any one of the names provided to mito_name ribo_name or mito_ribo_name is present in meta.data slot.
list_species_names	returns list of all accepted values to use for default species names which contain internal regex/feature lists (human, mouse, marmoset, zebrafish, rat, drosophila, rhesus macaque, and chicken). Default is FALSE.
assay	Assay to use (default is the current object default assay).
species_prefix	the species prefix in front of gene symbols in object if providing two species for multi-species aligned dataset.

### Value

An object of the same class as object with columns added to object meta data.

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
# Liger  
liger_object <- Add_Mito_Ribo(object = liger_object, species = "human")  
  
## End(Not run)  
  
## Not run:  
# Seurat  
seurat_object <- Add_Mito_Ribo(object = seurat_object, species = "human")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_Pct\_Diff

*Add percentage difference to DE results*

---

## Description

Adds new column labeled "pct\_diff" to the data.frame output of [FindMarkers](#), [FindAllMarkers](#), or other DE test data.frames.

## Usage

```
Add_Pct_Diff(  
  marker_dataframe,  
  pct.1_name = "pct.1",  
  pct.2_name = "pct.2",  
  overwrite = FALSE  
)
```

## Arguments

marker_dataframe	data.frame containing the results of <a href="#">FindMarkers</a> , <a href="#">FindAllMarkers</a> , or other DE test data.frame.
pct.1_name	the name of data.frame column corresponding to percent expressed in group 1. Default is Seurat default "pct.1".
pct.2_name	the name of data.frame column corresponding to percent expressed in group 2. Default is Seurat default "pct.2".
overwrite	logical. If the marker_dataframe already contains column named "pct_diff" whether to overwrite or return error message. Default is FALSE.

## Value

Returns input marker\_dataframe with additional "pct\_diff" column.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
marker_df <- FindAllMarkers(object = obj_name)
marker_df <- Add_Pct_Diff(marker_dataframe = marker_df)
# or piped with function
marker_df <- FindAllMarkers(object = obj_name) %>%
  Add_Pct_Diff()

## End(Not run)
```

---

Add_Sample_Meta	<i>Add Sample Level Meta Data</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Add meta data from ample level data.frame/tibble to cell level `seurat@meta.data` slot

**Usage**

```
Add_Sample_Meta(
  seurat_object,
  meta_data,
  join_by_seurat,
  join_by_meta,
  na_ok = FALSE,
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	object name.
<code>meta_data</code>	data.frame/tibble containing meta data or path to file to read. Must be formatted as either data.frame or tibble.
<code>join_by_seurat</code>	name of the column in <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> that contains matching variables to <code>join_by_meta</code> in <code>meta_data</code> .
<code>join_by_meta</code>	name of the column in <code>meta_data</code> that contains matching variables to <code>join_by_seurat</code> in <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> .
<code>na_ok</code>	logical, is it ok to add NA values to <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> . Default is FALSE. Be very careful if setting TRUE because if there is error in join operation it may result in all <code>@meta.data</code> values being replaced with NA.
<code>overwrite</code>	logical, if there are shared columns between <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> and <code>meta_data</code> should the current <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> columns be overwritten. Default is FALSE. This parameter excludes values provided to <code>join_by_seurat</code> and <code>join_by_meta</code> .

**Value**

Seurat object with new @meta.data columns

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# meta_data present in environment
sample_level_meta <- data.frame(...)
obj <- Add_Sample_Meta(seurat_object = obj, meta_data = sample_level_meta,
  join_by_seurat = "orig.ident", join_by_meta = "sample_ID")

# from meta data file
obj <- Add_Sample_Meta(seurat_object = obj, meta_data = "meta_data/sample_level_meta.csv",
  join_by_seurat = "orig.ident", join_by_meta = "sample_ID")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Add\_Top\_Gene\_Pct

*Add Percent of High Abundance Genes*

---

**Description**

Add the percentage of counts occupied by the top XX most highly expressed genes in each cell.

**Usage**

```
Add_Top_Gene_Pct(object, ...)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
Add_Top_Gene_Pct(
  object,
  num_top_genes = 50,
  meta_col_name = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

```
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Add_Top_Gene_Pct(
  object,
  num_top_genes = 50,
  meta_col_name = NULL,
  assay = "RNA",
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

object	Seurat or LIGER object.
...	Arguments passed to other methods
num_top_genes	An integer vector specifying the size(s) of the top set of high-abundance genes. Used to compute the percentage of library size occupied by the most highly expressed genes in each cell.
meta_col_name	name to use for new meta data column. Default is "percent_topXX", where XX is equal to the value provided to num_top_genes.
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing an meta.data column. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if column with name provided to meta_col_name is present in meta.data slot.
verbose	logical, whether to print messages with status updates, default is TRUE.
assay	assay to use in calculation. Default is "RNA". <i>Note</i> This should only be changed if storing corrected and uncorrected assays in same object (e.g. outputs of both Cell Ranger and Cell Bender).

**Value**

A liger Object  
A Seurat Object

**References**

This function uses scuttle package (license: GPL-3) to calculate the percent of expression coming from top XX genes in each cell. Parameter description for num\_top\_genes also from scuttle. If using this function in analysis, in addition to citing scCustomize, please cite scuttle: McCarthy DJ, Campbell KR, Lun ATL, Willis QF (2017). "Scater: pre-processing, quality control, normalisation and visualisation of single-cell RNA-seq data in R." *Bioinformatics*, 33, 1179-1186. doi:10.1093/bioinformatics/btw777.

**See Also**

<https://bioconductor.org/packages/release/bioc/html/scuttle.html>

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
liger_object <- Add_Top_Gene_Pct(object = liger_object, num_top_genes = 50)

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
library(Seurat)
pbmc_small <- Add_Top_Gene_Pct(seurat_object = pbmc_small, num_top_genes = 50)

## End(Not run)
```

---

as.anndata                      *Convert objects to anndata objects*

---

## Description

Convert objects (Seurat & LIGER) to anndata objects

## Usage

```
as.anndata(x, ...)  
  
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'  
as.anndata(  
  x,  
  file_path,  
  file_name,  
  assay = NULL,  
  main_layer = "data",  
  other_layers = "counts",  
  transfer_dimreduc = TRUE,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)  
  
## S3 method for class 'liger'  
as.anndata(  
  x,  
  file_path,  
  file_name,  
  transfer_norm.data = FALSE,  
  reduction_label = NULL,  
  add_barcode_names = FALSE,  
  barcode_prefix = TRUE,  
  barcode_cell_id_delimiter = "_",  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

x	Seurat or LIGER object
...	Arguments passed to other methods
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	file name.
assay	Assay containing data to use, (default is object default assay).



main_layer	the layer of data to become default layer in anndata object (default is "data").
other_layers	other data layers to transfer to anndata object (default is "counts").
transfer_dimreduc	logical, whether to transfer dimensionality reduction coordinates from Seurat to anndata object (default is TRUE).
verbose	logical, whether to print status messages during object conversion (default is TRUE).
transfer_norm.data	logical, whether to transfer the norm.data in addition to raw.data, default is FALSE.
reduction_label	What to label the visualization dimensionality reduction. LIGER does not store name of technique and therefore needs to be set manually.
add_barcode_names	logical, whether to add dataset names to the cell barcodes when merging object data, default is FALSE.
barcode_prefix	logical, if add_barcode_names = TRUE should the names be added as prefix to current cell barcodes/names or a suffix (default is TRUE; prefix).
barcode_cell_id_delimiter	The delimiter to use when adding dataset id to barcode prefix/suffix. Default is "_".

**Value**

an anndata object generated from x, saved at path provided.

**References**

Seurat version modified and enhanced version of `sceasy::seurat2anndata` (sceasy package: <https://github.com/cellgeni/sceasy>; License: GPL-3. Function has additional checks and supports Seurat V3 and V5 object structure.

LIGER version inspired by `sceasy::seurat2anndata` modified and updated to apply to LIGER objects (sceasy package: <https://github.com/cellgeni/sceasy>; License: GPL-3.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
as.anndata(x = seurat_object, file_path = "/folder_name", file_name = "anndata_converted.h5ad")

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
as.anndata(x = liger_object, file_path = "/folder_name", file_name = "anndata_converted.h5ad")

## End(Not run)
```

---

`as.LIGER`*Convert objects to LIGER objects*

---

**Description**

Convert objects (Seurat & lists of Seurat Objects) to anndata objects

**Usage**

```
as.LIGER(x, ...)  
  
## S3 method for class 'Seurat'  
as.LIGER(  
  x,  
  group.by = "orig.ident",  
  layers_name = NULL,  
  assay = "RNA",  
  remove_missing = FALSE,  
  renormalize = TRUE,  
  use_seurat_var_genes = FALSE,  
  use_seurat_dimreduc = FALSE,  
  reduction = NULL,  
  keep_meta = TRUE,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)  
  
## S3 method for class 'list'  
as.LIGER(  
  x,  
  group.by = "orig.ident",  
  dataset_names = NULL,  
  assay = "RNA",  
  remove_missing = FALSE,  
  renormalize = TRUE,  
  use_seurat_var_genes = FALSE,  
  var_genes_method = "intersect",  
  keep_meta = TRUE,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>x</code>	An object to convert to class <code>liger</code>
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed to other methods

group.by	Variable in meta data which contains variable to split data by, (default is "orig.ident").
layers_name	name of meta.data column used to split layers if setting group.by = "layers".
assay	Assay containing raw data to use, (default is "RNA").
remove_missing	logical, whether to remove missing genes with no counts when converting to LIGER object (default is FALSE).
renormalize	logical, whether to perform normalization after LIGER object creation (default is TRUE).
use_seurat_var_genes	logical, whether to transfer variable features from Seurat object to new LIGER object (default is FALSE).
use_seurat_dimreduc	logical, whether to transfer dimensionality reduction coordinates from Seurat to new LIGER object (default is FALSE).
reduction	Name of Seurat reduction to transfer if use_seurat_dimreduc = TRUE.
keep_meta	logical, whether to transfer columns in Seurat meta.data slot to LIGER cell.data slot (default is TRUE).
verbose	logical, whether to print status messages during object conversion (default is TRUE).
dataset_names	optional, vector of names to use for naming datasets.
var_genes_method	how variable genes should be selected from Seurat objects if use_seurat_var_genes = TRUE. Can be either "intersect" or "union", (default is "intersect").

## Value

a liger object generated from x

## References

modified and enhanced version of `rLiger::seuratToLiger`.

## Examples

```
## Not run:
liger_object <- as.LIGER(x = seurat_object)

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
liger_object <- as.LIGER(x = seurat_object_list)

## End(Not run)
```

---

as.Seurat.liger      *Convert objects to Seurat objects*

---

## Description

Merges raw.data and scale.data of object, and creates Seurat object with these values along with slots containing dimensionality reduction coordinates, iNMF factorization, and cluster assignments. Supports Seurat V3/4 and V4.

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
as.Seurat(
  x,
  nms = names(x@H),
  renormalize = TRUE,
  use.liger.genes = TRUE,
  by.dataset = FALSE,
  keep_meta = TRUE,
  reduction_label = "UMAP",
  seurat_assay = "RNA",
  assay_type = NULL,
  add_barcode_names = FALSE,
  barcode_prefix = TRUE,
  barcode_cell_id_delimiter = "_",
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

x	liger object.
nms	By default, labels cell names with dataset of origin (this is to account for cells in different datasets which may have same name). Other names can be passed here as vector, must have same length as the number of datasets. (default names(H)).
renormalize	Whether to log-normalize raw data using Seurat defaults (default TRUE).
use.liger.genes	Whether to carry over variable genes (default TRUE).
by.dataset	Include dataset of origin in cluster identity in Seurat object (default FALSE).
keep_meta	logical. Whether to transfer additional metadata (nGene/nUMI/dataset already transferred) to new Seurat Object. Default is TRUE.
reduction_label	Name of dimensionality reduction technique used. Enables accurate transfer or name to Seurat object instead of defaulting to "tSNE".
seurat_assay	Name to set for assay in Seurat Object. Default is "RNA".

assay_type	what type of Seurat assay to create in new object (Assay vs Assay5). Default is NULL which will default to the current user settings. See <a href="#">Convert_Assay</a> parameter convert_to for acceptable values.
add_barcode_names	logical, whether to add dataset names to the cell barcodes when creating Seurat object, default is FALSE.
barcode_prefix	logical, if add_barcode_names = TRUE should the names be added as prefix to current cell barcodes/names or a suffix (default is TRUE; prefix).
barcode_cell_id_delimiter	The delimiter to use when adding dataset id to barcode prefix/suffix. Default is "_".
...	unused.

### Details

Stores original dataset identity by default in new object metadata if dataset names are passed in nms. iNMF factorization is stored in dim.reduction object with key "iNMF".

### Value

Seurat object with raw.data, scale.data, reduction\_label, iNMF, and ident slots set.

Seurat object.

### References

Original function is part of LIGER package <https://github.com/welch-lab/liger> (Licence: GPL-3). Function was modified for use in scCustomize with additional parameters/functionality.

### Examples

```
## Not run:
seurat_object <- as.Seurat(x = liger_object)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Barcode\_Plot

*Create Barcode Rank Plot*

---

### Description

Plot UMI vs. Barcode Rank with inflection and knee. Requires input from DropletUtils package.

**Usage**

```
Barcode_Plot(  
  br_out,  
  pt.size = 6,  
  plot_title = "Barcode Ranks",  
  raster_dpi = c(1024, 1024),  
  plateau = NULL  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>br_out</code>	DFrame output from <a href="#">barcodeRanks</a> .
<code>pt.size</code>	point size for plotting, default is 6.
<code>plot_title</code>	Title for plot, default is "Barcode Ranks".
<code>raster_dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(1024, 1024)</code> .
<code>plateau</code>	numerical value at which to add vertical line designating estimated empty droplet plateau (default is <code>NULL</code> ).

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
mat <- Read10X_h5(filename = "raw_feature_bc_matrix.h5")  
  
br_results <- DropletUtils::barcodeRanks(mat)  
  
Barcode_Plot(br_out = br_results)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Blank\_Theme

*Blank Theme*

---

**Description**

Shortcut for thematic modification to remove all axis labels and grid lines

**Usage**

```
Blank_Theme(...)
```

**Arguments**

... extra arguments passed to `ggplot2::theme()`.

**Value**

Returns a list-like object of class *theme*.

**Examples**

```
# Generate a plot and customize theme
library(ggplot2)
df <- data.frame(x = rnorm(n = 100, mean = 20, sd = 2), y = rbinom(n = 100, size = 100, prob = 0.2))
p <- ggplot(data = df, mapping = aes(x = x, y = y)) + geom_point(mapping = aes(color = 'red'))
p + Blank_Theme()
```

---

Case\_Check

*Check for alternate case features*


---

**Description**

Checks Seurat object for the presence of features with the same spelling but alternate case.

**Usage**

```
Case_Check(
  seurat_object,
  gene_list,
  case_check_msg = TRUE,
  return_features = TRUE,
  assay = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

`seurat_object` Seurat object name.

`gene_list` vector of genes to check.

`case_check_msg` logical. Whether to print message to console if alternate case features are found in addition to inclusion in returned list. Default is TRUE.

`return_features` logical. Whether to return vector of alternate case features. Default is TRUE.

`assay` Name of assay to pull feature names from. If NULL will use the result of `DefaultAssay(seurat_object)`.

**Value**

If features found returns vector of found alternate case features and prints message depending on parameters specified.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
alt_features <- Case_Check(seurat_object = obj_name, gene_list = DEG_list)

## End(Not run)
```

---

CellBender\_Diff\_Plot *Plot Number of Cells/Nuclei per Sample*

---

**Description**

Plot of total cell or nuclei number per sample grouped by another meta data variable.

**Usage**

```
CellBender_Diff_Plot(
  feature_diff_df,
  pct_diff_threshold = 25,
  num_features = NULL,
  label = TRUE,
  num_labels = 20,
  min_count_label = 1,
  repel = TRUE,
  custom_labels = NULL,
  plot_line = TRUE,
  plot_title = "Raw Counts vs. Cell Bender Counts",
  x_axis_label = "Raw Data Counts",
  y_axis_label = "Cell Bender Counts",
  xnudge = 0,
  ynudge = 0,
  max.overlaps = 100,
  label_color = "dodgerblue",
  fontface = "bold",
  label_size = 3.88,
  bg.color = "white",
  bg.r = 0.15,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

`feature_diff_df`  
name of data.frame created using [CellBender\\_Feature\\_Diff](#).

`pct_diff_threshold`  
threshold to use for feature plotting. Resulting plot will only contain features which exhibit percent change  $\geq$  value. Default is 25.



num_features	Number of features to plot. Will ignore pct_diff_threshold and return plot with specified number of features. Default is NULL.
label	logical, whether or not to label the features that have largest percent difference between raw and CellBender counts (Default is TRUE).
num_labels	Number of features to label if label = TRUE, (default is 20).
min_count_label	Minimum number of raw counts per feature necessary to be included in plot labels (default is 1)
repel	logical, whether to use geom_text_repel to create a nicely-repelled labels; this is slow when a lot of points are being plotted. If using <code>repel</code> , set <code>xnudge</code> and <code>ynudge</code> to 0, (Default is TRUE).
custom_labels	A custom set of features to label instead of the features most different between raw and CellBender counts.
plot_line	logical, whether to plot diagonal line with slope = 1 (Default is TRUE).
plot_title	Plot title.
x_axis_label	Label for x axis.
y_axis_label	Label for y axis.
xnudge	Amount to nudge X and Y coordinates of labels by.
ynudge	Amount to nudge X and Y coordinates of labels by.
max.overlaps	passed to <code>geom_text_repel</code> , exclude text labels that overlap too many things. Defaults to 100.
label_color	Color to use for text labels.
fontface	font face to use for text labels (“plain”, “bold”, “italic”, “bold.italic”) (Default is “bold”).
label_size	text size for feature labels (passed to <code>geom_text_repel</code> ).
bg.color	color to use for shadow/outline of text labels (passed to <code>geom_text_repel</code> ) (Default is white).
bg.r	radius to use for shadow/outline of text labels (passed to <code>geom_text_repel</code> ) (Default is 0.15).
...	Extra parameters passed to <code>geom_text_repel</code> through <code>LabelPoints</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# get cell bender differences data.frame
cb_stats <- CellBender_Feature_Diff(seurat_object = obj, raw_assay = "RAW",
cell_bender_assay = "RNA")

# plot
CellBender_Diff_Plot(feature_diff_df = cb_stats, pct_diff_threshold = 25)
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

CellBender\_Feature\_Diff

*CellBender Feature Differences*

---

### Description

Get quick values for raw counts, CellBender counts, count differences, and percent count differences per feature.

### Usage

```
CellBender_Feature_Diff(  
  seurat_object = NULL,  
  raw_assay = NULL,  
  cell_bender_assay = NULL,  
  raw_mat = NULL,  
  cell_bender_mat = NULL  
)
```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>raw_assay</code>	Name of the assay containing the raw count data.
<code>cell_bender_assay</code>	Name of the assay containing the CellBender count data.
<code>raw_mat</code>	Name of raw count matrix in environment if not using Seurat object.
<code>cell_bender_mat</code>	Name of CellBender count matrix in environment if not using Seurat object.

### Value

A data.frame containing summed raw counts, CellBender counts, count difference, and percent difference in counts.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
cb_stats <- CellBender_Feature_Diff(seurat_object = obj, raw_assay = "RAW",  
  cell_bender_assay = "RNA")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Cells.liger                      *Extract Cells from LIGER Object*

---

**Description**

Extract all cell barcodes from LIGER object

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'  
Cells(x, by_dataset = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	LIGER object name.
by_dataset	logical, whether to return list with vector of cell barcodes for each dataset in LIGER object or to return single vector of cell barcodes across all datasets in object (default is FALSE; return vector of cells).
...	Arguments passed to other methods

**Value**

vector or list depending on by\_dataset parameter

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# return single vector of all cells  
all_features <- Cells(x = object, by_dataset = FALSE)  
  
# return list of vectors containing cells from each individual dataset in object  
dataset_features <- Cells(x = object, by_dataset = TRUE)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Cells\_by\_Identities\_LIGER  
*Extract Cells by identity*

---

**Description**

Extract all cell barcodes by identity from LIGER object

**Usage**

```
Cells_by_Identities_LIGER(liger_object, group.by = NULL, by_dataset = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

**liger\_object** LIGER object name.  
**group.by** name of meta data column to use, default is current default clustering.  
**by\_dataset** logical, whether to return list with entries for cell barcodes for each identity in group.by or to return list of lists (1 entry per dataset and each ident within the dataset) (default is FALSE; return list)

**Value**

list or list of lists depending on by\_dataset parameter

**Examples**

```

## Not run:
# return single vector of all cells
cells_by_idents <- Cells_by_Identities_LIGER(liger_object = object, by_dataset = FALSE)

# return list of vectors containing cells from each individual dataset in object
cells_by_idents_by_dataset <- Cells_by_Identities_LIGER(liger_object = object, by_dataset = TRUE)

## End(Not run)

```

---

Cells_per_Sample	<i>Cells per Sample</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Get data.frame containing the number of cells per sample.

**Usage**

```
Cells_per_Sample(seurat_object, sample_col = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

**seurat\_object** Seurat object  
**sample\_col** column name in meta.data that contains sample ID information. Default is NULL and will use "orig.ident" column

**Value**

A data.frame

**Examples**

```

library(Seurat)
num_cells <- Cells_per_Sample(seurat_object = pbmc_small, sample_col = "orig.ident")

```

---

Cell\_Highlight\_Plot    *Meta Highlight Plot*

---

### Description

Create Plot with meta data variable of interest highlighted

### Usage

```
Cell_Highlight_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  cells_highlight,
  highlight_color = NULL,
  background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  figure_plot = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  label = FALSE,
  split.by = NULL,
  split_seurat = FALSE,
  reduction = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>cells_highlight</code>	Cell names to highlight in named list.
<code>highlight_color</code>	Color to highlight cells.
<code>background_color</code>	non-highlighted cell colors (default is "lightgray")..
<code>pt.size</code>	point size for both highlighted cluster and background.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>figure_plot</code>	logical. Whether to remove the axes and plot with legend on left of plot denoting axes labels. (Default is FALSE). Requires <code>split_seurat = TRUE</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .

label	Whether to label the highlighted meta data variable(s). Default is FALSE.
split.by	Variable in @meta.data to split the plot by.
split_seurat	logical. Whether or not to display split plots like Seurat (shared y axis) or as individual plots in layout. Default is FALSE.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If highlight_color = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
...	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)

# Creating example non-overlapping vectors of cells
MS4A1 <- WhichCells(object = pbmc_small, expression = MS4A1 > 4)
GZMB <- WhichCells(object = pbmc_small, expression = GZMB > 4)

# Format as named list
cells <- list("MS4A1" = MS4A1,
             "GZMB" = GZMB)

Cell_Highlight_Plot(seurat_object = pbmc_small, cells_highlight = cells)
```

---

Change_Delim_All	<i>Change all delimiters in cell name</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

Change all instances of delimiter in cell names from list of data.frames/matrices or single data.frame/matrix

**Usage**

```
Change_Delim_All(data, current_delim, new_delim)
```

**Arguments**

data	Either matrix/data.frame or list of matrices/data.frames with the cell barcodes in the column names.
current_delim	a single value of current delimiter.
new_delim	a single value of new delimiter desired.

**Value**

matrix or data.frame with new column names.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
dge_matrix <- Change_Delim_All(data = dge_matrix, current_delim = ".", new_delim = "-")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Change\_Delim\_Prefix    *Change barcode prefix delimiter*

---

**Description**

Change barcode prefix delimiter from list of data.frames/matrices or single data.frame/matrix

**Usage**

```
Change_Delim_Prefix(data, current_delim, new_delim)
```

**Arguments**

data	Either matrix/data.frame or list of matrices/data.frames with the cell barcodes in the column names.
current_delim	a single value of current delimiter.
new_delim	a single value of new delimiter desired.

**Value**

matrix or data.frame with new column names.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
dge_matrix <- Change_Delim_Prefix(data = dge_matrix, current_delim = ".", new_delim = "-")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

Change\_Delim\_Suffix    *Change barcode suffix delimiter*

---

**Description**

Change barcode suffix delimiter from list of data.frames/matrices or single data.frame/matrix

**Usage**

```
Change_Delim_Suffix(data, current_delim, new_delim)
```

**Arguments**

data	Either matrix/data.frame or list of matrices/data.frames with the cell barcodes in the column names.
current_delim	a single value of current delimiter.
new_delim	a single value of new delimiter desired.

**Value**

matrix or data.frame with new column names.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
dge_matrix <- Change_Delim_Suffix(data = dge_matrix, current_delim = ".", new_delim = "-")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

CheckMatrix\_scCustom    *Check Matrix Validity*

---

**Description**

Native implementation of SeuratObjects CheckMatrix but with modified warning messages.

**Usage**

```
CheckMatrix_scCustom(  
  object,  
  checks = c("infinite", "logical", "integer", "na")  
)
```



**Arguments**

object	A matrix
checks	Type of checks to perform, choose one or more from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “infinite”: Emit a warning if any value is infinite</li> <li>• “logical”: Emit a warning if any value is a logical</li> <li>• “integer”: Emit a warning if any value is <i>not</i> an integer</li> <li>• “na”: Emit a warning if any value is an NA or NaN</li> </ul>

**Value**

Emits warnings for each test and invisibly returns NULL

**References**

Re-implementing CheckMatrix only for sparse matrices with modified warning messages. Original function from SeuratObject <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat-object/blob/9c0eda946e162d8595696e5280a6eR/utils.R#L625-L650> (License: MIT).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
mat <- Read10X(...)
CheckMatrix_scCustom(object = mat)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Clustered\_DotPlot      *Clustered DotPlot*

---

**Description**

Clustered DotPlots using ComplexHeatmap

**Usage**

```
Clustered_DotPlot(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  label_selected_features = NULL,
  split.by = NULL,
  colors_use_exp = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  exp_color_min = -2,
  exp_color_middle = NULL,
  exp_color_max = 2,
  exp_value_type = "scaled",
  print_exp_quantiles = FALSE,
```

```

colors_use_idents = NULL,
show_ident_colors = TRUE,
show_annotation_name = TRUE,
x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
plot_padding = NULL,
flip = FALSE,
k = 1,
feature_km_repeats = 1000,
ident_km_repeats = 1000,
row_label_size = 8,
row_label_fontface = "plain",
grid_color = NULL,
cluster_feature = TRUE,
cluster_ident = TRUE,
column_label_size = 8,
legend_label_size = 10,
legend_title_size = 10,
legend_position = "right",
legend_orientation = NULL,
show_ident_legend = TRUE,
show_row_names = TRUE,
show_column_names = TRUE,
column_names_side = "bottom",
row_names_side = "right",
raster = FALSE,
plot_km_elbow = TRUE,
elbow_kmax = NULL,
assay = NULL,
group.by = NULL,
idents = NULL,
show_parent_dend_line = TRUE,
nan_error = FALSE,
ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
color_seed = 123,
seed = 123
)

```

### Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
features	Features to plot.
label_selected_features	a subset of features to only label some of the plotted features.
split.by	Variable in @meta.data to split the identities plotted by.
colors_use_exp	Color palette to use for plotting expression scale. Default is viridis::plasma(n = 20, direction = -1).
exp_color_min	Minimum scaled average expression threshold (everything smaller will be set to this). Default is -2.

<code>exp_color_middle</code>	What scaled expression value to use for the middle of the provided <code>colors_use_exp</code> . By default will be set to value in middle of <code>exp_color_min</code> and <code>exp_color_max</code> .
<code>exp_color_max</code>	Minimum scaled average expression threshold (everything smaller will be set to this). Default is 2.
<code>exp_value_type</code>	Whether to plot average normalized expression or scaled average normalized expression. Only valid when <code>split.by</code> is provided.
<code>print_exp_quantiles</code>	Whether to print the quantiles of expression data in addition to plots. Default is FALSE. NOTE: These values will be altered by choices of <code>exp_color_min</code> and <code>exp_color_max</code> if there are values below or above those cutoffs, respectively.
<code>colors_use_idents</code>	specify color palette to used for identity labels. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with <code>shuffle = TRUE</code> both from <code>DiscretePalette_scCustomize</code> .
<code>show_ident_colors</code>	logical, whether to show colors for idents on the column/rows of the plot (default is TRUE).
<code>show_annotation_name</code>	logical, whether or not to show annotation name next to color bar. Default is TRUE.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	How to rotate column labels. By default set to TRUE which rotates labels 45 degrees. If set FALSE rotation is set to 0 degrees. Users can also supply custom angle for text rotation.
<code>plot_padding</code>	if plot needs extra white space padding so no plot or labels are cutoff. The parameter accepts TRUE or numeric vector of length 4. If TRUE padding will be set to <code>c(2, 10, 0 0)</code> (bottom, left, top, right). Can also be customized further with numeric vector of length 4 specifying the amount of padding in millimeters. Default is NULL, no padding.
<code>flip</code>	logical, whether to flip the axes of final plot. Default is FALSE; rows = features and columns = idents.
<code>k</code>	Value to use for k-means clustering on features Sets ( <code>km</code> ) parameter in <code>ComplexHeatmap::Heatmap()</code> . From <code>ComplexHeatmap::Heatmap()</code> : Apply k-means clustering on rows. If the value is larger than 1, the heatmap will be split by rows according to the k-means clustering. For each row slice, hierarchical clustering is still applied with parameters above.
<code>feature_km_repeats</code>	Number of k-means runs to get a consensus k-means clustering for features. Note if <code>feature_km_repeats</code> is set to value greater than one, the final number of groups might be smaller than <code>row_km</code> , but this might mean the original <code>row_km</code> is not a good choice. Default is 1000.
<code>ident_km_repeats</code>	Number of k-means runs to get a consensus k-means clustering. Similar to <code>feature_km_repeats</code> . Default is 1000.
<code>row_label_size</code>	Size of the feature labels. Provided to <code>row_names_gp</code> in <code>Heatmap</code> call.

row_label_fontface	Fontface to use for row labels. Provided to row_names_gp in Heatmap call.
grid_color	color to use for heatmap grid. Default is NULL which "removes" grid by using NA color.
cluster_feature	logical, whether to cluster and reorder feature axis. Default is TRUE.
cluster_ident	logical, whether to cluster and reorder identity axis. Default is TRUE.
column_label_size	Size of the feature labels. Provided to column_names_gp in Heatmap call.
legend_label_size	Size of the legend text labels. Provided to labels_gp in Heatmap legend call.
legend_title_size	Size of the legend title text labels. Provided to title_gp in Heatmap legend call.
legend_position	Location of the plot legend (default is "right").
legend_orientation	Orientation of the legend (default is NULL).
show_ident_legend	logical, whether to show the color legend for idents in plot (default is TRUE).
show_row_names	logical, whether to show row names on plot (default is TRUE).
show_column_names	logical, whether to show column names on plot (default is TRUE).
column_names_side	Should the row names be on the "bottom" or "top" of plot. Default is "bottom".
row_names_side	Should the row names be on the "left" or "right" of plot. Default is "right".
raster	Logical, whether to render in raster format (faster plotting, smaller files). Default is FALSE.
plot_km_elbow	Logical, whether or not to return the Sum Squared Error Elbow Plot for k-means clustering. Estimating elbow of this plot is one way to determine "optimal" value for k. Based on: <a href="https://stackoverflow.com/a/15376462/15568251">https://stackoverflow.com/a/15376462/15568251</a> .
elbow_kmax	The maximum value of k to use for plot_km_elbow. Suggest setting larger value so the true shape of plot can be observed. Value must be 1 less than number of features provided. If NULL parameter will be set dependent on length of feature list up to elbow_kmax = 20.
assay	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
group.by	Group (color) cells in different ways (for example, orig.ident).
idents	Which classes to include in the plot (default is all).
show_parent_dend_line	Logical, Sets parameter of same name in ComplexHeatmap: :Heatmap(). From ComplexHeatmap: :Heatmap(): When heatmap is split, whether to add a dashed line to mark parent dendrogram and children dendrograms. Default is TRUE.
nan_error	logical, default is FALSE. <i>ONLY</i> set this value to true if you get error related to NaN values when attempting to use plotting function. Plotting may be slightly slower if TRUE depending on number of features being plotted.

`ggplot_default_colors` logical. If `colors_use = NULL`, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.

`color_seed` random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if `colors_use = NULL` and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

`seed` Sets seed for reproducible plotting (ComplexHeatmap plot).

**Value**

A ComplexHeatmap or if `plot_km_elbow = TRUE` a list containing ggplot2 object and ComplexHeatmap.

**Author(s)**

Ming Tang (Original Code), Sam Marsh (Wrap single function, added/modified functionality)

**References**

<https://divingintogeneticsandgenomics.rbind.io/post/clustered-dotplot-for-single-cell-rnaseq/>

**See Also**

<https://x.com/tangming2005>

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
Clustered_DotPlot(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = c("CD3E", "CD8", "GZMB", "MS4A1"))
```

---

Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot

*Cluster Highlight Plot*

---

**Description**

Create Plot with cluster of interest highlighted

**Usage**

```
Cluster_Highlight_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  cluster_name,
  highlight_color = NULL,
  background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
```

```

figure_plot = FALSE,
raster = NULL,
raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
label = FALSE,
split.by = NULL,
split_seurat = FALSE,
split_title_size = 15,
num_columns = NULL,
reduction = NULL,
ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>cluster_name</code>	Name(s) (or number(s)) identity of cluster to be highlighted.
<code>highlight_color</code>	Color(s) to highlight cells. The default is NULL and plot will use <code>scCustomize_Palette()</code> .
<code>background_color</code>	non-highlighted cell colors.
<code>pt.size</code>	point size for both highlighted cluster and background.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>figure_plot</code>	logical. Whether to remove the axes and plot with legend on left of plot denoting axes labels. (Default is FALSE). Requires <code>split_seurat = TRUE</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
<code>label</code>	Whether to label the highlighted cluster(s). Default is FALSE.
<code>split.by</code>	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
<code>split_seurat</code>	logical. Whether or not to display split plots like Seurat (shared y axis) or as individual plots in layout. Default is FALSE.
<code>split_title_size</code>	size for plot title labels when using <code>split.by</code> .
<code>num_columns</code>	Number of columns in plot layout. Only valid if <code>split.by != NULL</code> .
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2 "hue"</code> palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

### Value

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
Cluster_Highlight_Plot(seurat_object = pbmc_small, cluster_name = "1", highlight_color = "gold",  
background_color = "lightgray", pt.size = 2)
```

---

Cluster\_Stats\_All\_Samples

*Calculate Cluster Stats*

---

**Description**

Calculates both overall and per sample cell number and percentages per cluster based on orig.ident.

**Usage**

```
Cluster_Stats_All_Samples(  
  seurat_object,  
  group.by = "orig.ident",  
  order_by_freq = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat\_object    Seurat object name.

group.by        meta data column to classify samples (default = "orig.ident").

order\_by\_freq   logical, whether the data.frame should be ordered by frequency of identity (default; TRUE), or by cluster/factor order (FALSE).

**Value**

A data.frame with rows in order of frequency or cluster order

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
stats <- Cluster_Stats_All_Samples(seurat_object = object, group.by = "orig.ident")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

ColorBlind\_Pal                      *Color Universal Design Short Palette*

---

### Description

Shortcut to a modified 8 color palette based on Color Universal Design (CUD) colorblindness friendly palette.

### Usage

```
ColorBlind_Pal()
```

### Value

modified/reordered color palette (8 colors) based on ditto-seq

### References

palette is slightly modified version of the Color Universal Design (CUD) colorblindness friendly palette <https://jfly.uni-koeln.de/color/>.

### Examples

```
cols <- ColorBlind_Pal()
PalettePlot(pal = cols)
```

---

Convert\_Assay                      *Convert between Seurat Assay types*

---

### Description

Will convert assays within a Seurat object between "Assay" and "Assay5" types.

### Usage

```
Convert_Assay(seurat_object, assay = NULL, convert_to)
```

### Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
assay	name(s) of assays to convert. Default is NULL and will check with users which assays they want to convert.
convert_to	value of what assay type to convert current assays to. #' <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accepted values for V3/4 are: "Assay", "assay", "V3", or "v3".</li> <li>• Accepted values for V5 are: "Assay5", "assay5", "V5", or "v5".</li> </ul>



**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# Convert to V3/4 assay  
obj <- Convert_Assay(seurat_object = obj, convert_to = "V3")  
  
# Convert to 5 assay  
obj <- Convert_Assay(seurat_object = obj, convert_to = "V5")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Copy\_From\_GCP

*Copy folder from GCP bucket from R Console*

---

**Description**

Run command from R console without moving to terminal to copy folder from GCP bucket to local storage

**Usage**

```
Copy_From_GCP(folder_file_path, gcp_bucket_path)
```

**Arguments**

folder\_file\_path  
folder to be copied to GCP bucket.  
gcp\_bucket\_path  
GCP bucket path to copy to files.

**Value**

No return value. Performs system copy from GCP bucket.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
Copy_From_GCP(folder_file_path = "plots/", gcp_bucket_path = "gs://bucket_name_and_folder_path")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

`Copy_To_GCP`*Copy folder to GCP bucket from R Console*

---

**Description**

Run command from R console without moving to terminal to copy folder to GCP bucket

**Usage**

```
Copy_To_GCP(folder_file_path, gcp_bucket_path)
```

**Arguments**

```
folder_file_path
                folder to be copied to GCP bucket.
gcp_bucket_path
                GCP bucket path to copy to files.
```

**Value**

No return value. Performs system copy to GCP bucket.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Copy_To_GCP(folder_file_path = "plots/", gcp_bucket_path = "gs://bucket_name_and_folder_path")

## End(Not run)
```

---

`Create_10X_H5`*Create H5 from 10X Outputs*

---

**Description**

Creates HDF5 formatted output analogous to the outputs created by Cell Ranger and can be read into Seurat, LIGER, or SCE class object. Requires DropletUtils package from Bioconductor.

**Usage**

```
Create_10X_H5(
  raw_data_file_path,
  source_type = "10X",
  save_file_path,
  save_name
)
```

**Arguments**

raw\_data\_file\_path      file path to raw data file(s).

source\_type            type of source data (Default is "10X"). Alternatively can provide "Matrix" or "data.frame".

save\_file\_path        file path to directory to save file.

save\_name             name prefix for output H5 file.

**Value**

A HDF5 format file that will be recognized as 10X Cell Ranger formatted file by Seurat or LIGER.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Create_10X_H5(raw_data_file_path = "file_path", save_file_path = "file_path2", save_name = "NAME")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Create\_CellBender\_Merged\_Seurat

*Create Seurat Object with Cell Bender and Raw data*

---

**Description**

Enables easy creation of Seurat object which contains both cell bender data and raw count data as separate assays within the object.

**Usage**

```
Create_CellBender_Merged_Seurat(
  raw_cell_bender_matrix = NULL,
  raw_counts_matrix = NULL,
  raw_assay_name = "RAW",
  min.cells = 5,
  min.features = 200,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

raw\_cell\_bender\_matrix      matrix file containing the cell bender correct counts.

raw\_counts\_matrix          matrix file contain the uncorrected Cell Ranger (or other) counts.

`raw_assay_name` a key value to use specifying the name of assay. Default is "RAW".  
`min.cells` value to supply to `min.cells` parameter of `CreateSeuratObject`. Default is 5.  
`min.features` value to supply to `min.features` parameter of `CreateSeuratObject`. Default is 200.  
`...` Extra parameters passed to `CreateSeuratObject`.

**Value**

A Seurat Object contain both the Cell Bender corrected counts ("RNA" assay) and uncorrected counts ("RAW" assay; or other name specified to `raw_assay_name`).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
seurat_obj <- Create_CellBender_Merged_Seurat(raw_cell_bender_matrix = cb_matrix,
raw_counts_matrix = cr_matrix)

## End(Not run)
```

---

`Create_Cluster_Annotation_File`  
*Create cluster annotation csv file*

---

**Description**

create annotation file

**Usage**

```
Create_Cluster_Annotation_File(
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = "cluster_annotation"
)
```

**Arguments**

`file_path` path to directory to save file. Default is current working directory.  
`file_name` name to use for annotation file. Function automatically adds file type ".csv" suffix. Default is "cluster\_annotation".

**Value**

No value returned. Creates .csv file.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Create_Cluster_Annotation_File(file_path = "cluster_annotation_folder_name")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Dark2\_Pal

*Dark2 Palette*


---

**Description**

Shortcut to Dark2 color palette from RColorBrewer (8 Colors)

**Usage**

```
Dark2_Pal()
```

**Value**

"Dark2" color palette (8 colors)

**References**

Dark2 palette from RColorBrewer being called through paletteer. See RColorBrewer for more info on palettes <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=RColorBrewer>

**Examples**

```
cols <- Dark2_Pal()
PalettePlot(pal= cols)
```

---

Dataset\_Size\_LIGER

*Check size of LIGER datasets*


---

**Description**

Returns size (number of cells) in each dataset within liger object along with other desired meta data.

**Usage**

```
Dataset_Size_LIGER(
  liger_object,
  meta_data_column = NULL,
  filter_by = NULL,
  print_filter = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

`liger_object` LIGER object name.  
`meta_data_column` other meta data to include in returned data.frame.  
`filter_by` meta data column to filter data by. Will filter data to return only values for the largest dataset for each unique value in provided meta data column.  
`print_filter` logical, whether to print filtered results to console, default is FALSE.

**Value**

data.frame with dataset names, number of cells per dataset and if provided other meta data

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# Return values for all datasets  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

DimPlot\_All\_Samples    *DimPlot by Meta Data Column*

---

**Description**

Creates DimPlot layout containing all samples within Seurat Object from `orig.ident` column

**Usage**

```
DimPlot_All_Samples(  
  seurat_object,  
  meta_data_column = "orig.ident",  
  colors_use = "black",  
  pt.size = NULL,  
  aspect_ratio = NULL,  
  title_size = 15,  
  num_columns = NULL,  
  reduction = NULL,  
  dims = c(1, 2),  
  raster = NULL,  
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>meta_data_column</code>	Meta data column to split plots by.
<code>colors_use</code>	single color to use for all plots or a vector of colors equal to the number of plots.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>title_size</code>	size for plot title labels.
<code>num_columns</code>	number of columns in final layout plot.
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
<code>dims</code>	Which dimensions to plot. Defaults to <code>c(1,2)</code> if not specified.
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)

pbmc_small$sample_id <- sample(c("sample1", "sample2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

DimPlot_All_Samples(seurat_object = pbmc_small, meta_data_column = "sample_id", color = "black",
num_columns = 2)
```

---

DimPlot\_LIGER

*DimPlot LIGER Version*

---

**Description**

Standard and modified version of LIGER's `plotByDatasetAndCluster`

**Usage**

```
DimPlot_LIGER(
  liger_object,
  group.by = NULL,
  split.by = NULL,
  colors_use_cluster = NULL,
  colors_use_meta = NULL,
  pt_size = NULL,
  shuffle = TRUE,
  shuffle_seed = 1,
  reduction_label = "UMAP",
  reduction = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  label = TRUE,
  label_size = NA,
  label_repel = FALSE,
  label_box = FALSE,
  label_color = "black",
  combination = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  num_columns = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>liger_object</code>	liger liger_object. Need to perform clustering before calling this function
<code>group.by</code>	Variable to be plotted. If NULL will plot clusters from <code>liger@clusters</code> slot. If <code>combination = TRUE</code> will plot both clusters and meta data variable. If <code>combination = TRUE</code> will plot both clusters and meta data variable.
<code>split.by</code>	Variable to split plots by.
<code>colors_use_cluster</code>	colors to use for plotting by clusters. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with <code>shuffle = TRUE</code> both from <a href="#">DiscretePalette_scCustomize</a> .
<code>colors_use_meta</code>	colors to use for plotting by meta data (cell.data) variable. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with <code>shuffle = TRUE</code> both from <a href="#">DiscretePalette_scCustomize</a> .
<code>pt_size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>shuffle</code>	logical. Whether to randomly shuffle the order of points. This can be useful for crowded plots if points of interest are being buried. (Default is TRUE).
<code>shuffle_seed</code>	Sets the seed if randomly shuffling the order of points.



reduction_label	What to label the x and y axes of resulting plots. LIGER does not store name of technique and therefore needs to be set manually. Default is "UMAP". (only valid for rliger < 2.0.0).
reduction	specify reduction to use when plotting. Default is current object default reduction (only valid for rliger v2.0.0 or greater).
aspect_ratio	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
label	logical. Whether or not to label the clusters. ONLY applies to plotting by cluster. Default is TRUE.
label_size	size of cluster labels.
label_repel	logical. Whether to repel cluster labels from each other if plotting by cluster (if group.by = NULL or group.by = "cluster"). Default is FALSE.
label_box	logical. Whether to put a box around the label text (uses geom_text vs geom_label). Default is FALSE.
label_color	Color to use for cluster labels. Default is "black".
combination	logical, whether to return patchwork displaying both plots side by side. (Default is FALSE).
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to geom_scattermore(). Default is c(512, 512).
num_columns	Number of columns in plot layout. Only valid if split.by != NULL.
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If colors_use = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

**Value**

A ggplot/patchwork object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
DimPlot_LIGER(liger_object = obj_name, reduction_label = "UMAP")

## End(Not run)
```

---

`DimPlot_scCustom`*DimPlot with modified default settings*

---

**Description**

Creates DimPlot with some of the settings modified from their Seurat defaults (colors\_use, shuffle, label).

**Usage**

```
DimPlot_scCustom(  
  seurat_object,  
  colors_use = NULL,  
  pt.size = NULL,  
  reduction = NULL,  
  group.by = NULL,  
  split.by = NULL,  
  split_downsample = FALSE,  
  split_seurat = FALSE,  
  figure_plot = FALSE,  
  aspect_ratio = NULL,  
  add_prop_plot = FALSE,  
  prop_plot_percent = FALSE,  
  prop_plot_x_log = FALSE,  
  prop_plot_label = FALSE,  
  shuffle = TRUE,  
  seed = 1,  
  label = NULL,  
  label.size = 4,  
  label.color = "black",  
  label.box = FALSE,  
  dims = c(1, 2),  
  repel = FALSE,  
  raster = NULL,  
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),  
  num_columns = NULL,  
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,  
  downsample_seed = 123,  
  color_seed = 123,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

`seurat_object` Seurat object name.

colors_use	color palette to use for plotting. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with shuffle = TRUE both from DiscretePalette_scCustomize.
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
group.by	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, orig.ident); default is the current active.ident of the object.
split.by	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
split_downsample	logical, whether to downsample the split plots by number of cells in the smallest group. Default is FALSE.
split_seurat	logical. Whether or not to display split plots like Seurat (shared y axis) or as individual plots in layout. Default is FALSE.
figure_plot	logical. Whether to remove the axes and plot with legend on left of plot denoting axes labels. (Default is FALSE). Requires split_seurat = TRUE.
aspect_ratio	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
add_prop_plot	logical, whether to add plot to returned layout with the number of cells per identity (or percent of cells per identity). Default is FALSE.
prop_plot_percent	logical, if add_prop_plot = TRUE this parameter controls whether proportion plot shows raw cell number or percent of cells per identity. Default is FALSE; plots raw cell number.
prop_plot_x_log	logical, if add_prop_plot = TRUE this parameter controls whether to change x axis to log10 scale (Default is FALSE).
prop_plot_label	logical, if add_prop_plot = TRUE this parameter controls whether to label the bars with total number of cells or percentages; Default is FALSE.
shuffle	logical. Whether to randomly shuffle the order of points. This can be useful for crowded plots if points of interest are being buried. (Default is TRUE).
seed	Sets the seed if randomly shuffling the order of points.
label	Whether to label the clusters. By default if group.by = NULL label = TRUE, and otherwise it is FALSE.
label.size	Sets size of labels.
label.color	Sets the color of the label text.
label.box	Whether to put a box around the label text (geom_text vs geom_label).
dims	Which dimensions to plot. Defaults to c(1,2) if not specified.
repel	Repel labels.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to geom_scattermore(). Default is c(512, 512).

`num_columns`      Number of columns in plot layout. Only valid if `split.by` != NULL.  
`ggplot_default_colors`  
                     logical. If `colors_use` = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.  
`downsample_seed`  
                     random seed to use when selecting random cells to downsample in plot. Default = 123.  
`color_seed`        random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if `colors_use` = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.  
`...`              Extra parameters passed to `DimPlot`.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**References**

Many of the param names and descriptions are from Seurat to facilitate ease of use as this is simply a wrapper to alter some of the default parameters <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat/blob/master/R/visualization.R> (License: GPL-3). `figure_plot` parameter/code modified from code by Tim Stuart via twitter: <https://x.com/timoast/status/1526237116035891200?s=20&t=foJ0F81aPSjr1t7pk1cUPg>.

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
DimPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small)
```

---

DiscretePalette\_scCustomize

*Discrete color palettes*

---

**Description**

Helper function to return a number of discrete color palettes.

**Usage**

```
DiscretePalette_scCustomize(
  num_colors,
  palette = NULL,
  shuffle_pal = FALSE,
  seed = 123
)
```

**Arguments**

num_colors	Number of colors to be generated.
palette	Options are "alphabet", "alphabet2", "glasbey", "polychrome", "stepped", "ditto_seq", "varibow".
shuffle_pal	randomly shuffle the outputted palette. Most useful for varibow palette as that is normally an ordered palette.
seed	random seed for the palette shuffle. Default = 123.

**Value**

A vector of colors

**References**

This function uses the paletteer package <https://github.com/EmilHvitfeldt/paletteer> to provide simplified access to color palettes from many different R package sources while minimizing scCustomize current and future dependencies.

The following packages & palettes are called by this function (see individual packages for palette references/citations):

1. pals (via paletteer) <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=pals>
  - alphabet, alphabet2, glasbey, polychrome, and stepped.
2. dittoSeq <https://bioconductor.org/packages/release/bioc/html/dittoSeq.html>
  - dittoColors.
3. colorway <https://github.com/hypercompetent/colorway>
  - varibow

Function name and implementation modified from Seurat (License: GPL-3). <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat>

**Examples**

```
pal <- DiscretePalette_scCustomize(num_colors = 36, palette = "varibow")
PalettePlot(pal= pal)
```

---

DotPlot\_scCustom

*Customized DotPlot*

---

**Description**

Code for creating customized DotPlot

**Usage**

```
DotPlot_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  group.by = NULL,
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  remove_axis_titles = TRUE,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  y_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  facet_label_rotate = FALSE,
  flip_axes = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Features to plot.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of metadata variable (column) to group cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>colors_use</code>	specify color palette to used. Default is <code>viridis_plasma_dark_high</code> .
<code>remove_axis_titles</code>	logical. Whether to remove the x and y axis titles. Default = <code>TRUE</code> .
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>y_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>facet_label_rotate</code>	Rotate facet labels on grouped DotPlots by 45 degrees (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>flip_axes</code>	whether or not to flip and X and Y axes (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">DotPlot</a> .

**Value**

A `ggplot` object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
DotPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = c("CD3E", "CD8", "GZMB", "MS4A1"))
```

---

ElbowPlot\_scCustom      *ElbowPlot with modifications*

---

### Description

Creates ElbowPlot with ability to calculate and plot cutoffs for amount of variance conferred by the PCs. Cutoff 1 is PC where principal components only contribute less than 5% of standard deviation and the principal components cumulatively contribute 90% of the standard deviation. Cutoff 2 is point where the percent change in variation between the consecutive PCs is less than 0.1%.

### Usage

```
ElbowPlot_scCustom(  
  seurat_object,  
  ndims = NULL,  
  reduction = "pca",  
  calc_cutoffs = TRUE,  
  plot_cutoffs = TRUE,  
  line_colors = c("dodgerblue", "firebrick"),  
  linewidth = 0.5  
)
```

### Arguments

seurat_object	name of Seurat object
ndims	The number of dims to plot. Default is NULL and will plot all dims
reduction	The reduction to use, default is "pca"
calc_cutoffs	logical, whether or not to calculate the cutoffs, default is TRUE.
plot_cutoffs	logical, whether to plot the cutoffs as vertical lines on plot, default is TRUE.
line_colors	colors for the cutoff lines, default is c("dodgerblue", "firebrick").
linewidth	width of the cutoff lines, default is 0.5.

### Value

ggplot2 object

### References

Modified from following: [https://hbctraining.github.io/scRNA-seq/lessons/elbow\\_plot\\_metric.html](https://hbctraining.github.io/scRNA-seq/lessons/elbow_plot_metric.html).

### Examples

```
library(Seurat)  
ElbowPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small)
```

---

Embeddings.liger	<i>Extract matrix of embeddings</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------

---

### Description

Extract matrix containing iNMF or dimensionality reduction embeddings.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'  
Embeddings(object, reduction = NULL, iNMF = FALSE, check_only = FALSE, ...)
```

### Arguments

object	LIGER object name.
reduction	name of dimensionality reduction to pull
iNMF	logical, whether to extract iNMF h.norm matrix instead of dimensionality reduction embeddings.
check_only	logical, return TRUE if valid reduction is present.
...	Arguments passed to other methods

### Value

matrix

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
# Extract embedding matrix for current dimensionality reduction  
UMAP_coord <- Embeddings(object = liger_object)  
  
# Extract iNMF h.norm matrix  
iNMF_mat <- Embeddings(object = liger_object, reduction = "iNMF")  
  
## End(Not run)
```



---

ensembl\_exAM\_list      *Immediate Early Gene (IEG) gene lists*

---

**Description**

Ensembl IDs for immediate early genes (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_exAM\_list

**Format**

A list of three vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_exAM\_union\_ensembl** Ensembl ID for exAM genes from source publication  
(see below)

**Homo\_sapiens\_exAM\_union\_ensembl** Human Ensembl ID for exAM genes for homologous genes  
from mouse gene list

**Homo\_sapiens\_exAM\_micro\_ensembl** Human Ensembl ID for exAM genes for human microglia  
list

**Source**

Gene list is from: SI Table 22 Marsh et al., 2022 (Nature Neuroscience) from [doi:10.1038/s41593-022010228](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41593-022010228). See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl\_hemo\_id      *Ensembl Hemo IDs*

---

**Description**

A list of ensembl ids for hemoglobin genes (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_hemo\_id

**Format**

A list of six vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for mouse hemoglobin genes

**Homo\_sapiens\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for human hemoglobin genes

**Danio\_rerio\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for zebrafish hemoglobin genes

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for rat hemoglobin genes

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for fly hemoglobin genes

**Macaca\_mulatta\_hemo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for macaque hemoglobin genes

**Gallus\_gallus\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for chicken hemoglobin genes

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl_ieg_list	<i>Immediate Early Gene (IEG) gene lists</i>
------------------	--

---

**Description**

Ensembl IDs for immediate early genes (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_ieg\_list

**Format**

A list of seven vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_IEGs** Ensembl IDs for IEGs from source publication (see below)

**Homo\_sapiens\_IEGs** Ensembl IDs for homologous genes from mouse gene list

**Source**

Mouse gene list is from: SI Table 4 from [doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2017.09.026](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2017.09.026). Human gene list was compiled by first creating homologous gene list using biomaRt and then adding some manually curated homologs according to HGNC. See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl_lncRNA_id	<i>Ensembl lncRNA IDs</i>
-------------------	---------------------------

---

**Description**

A list of ensembl ids for lncRNA genes (Ensembl version 113; 04/08/2025)

**Usage**

ensembl\_lncRNA\_id

**Format**

A list of seven vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for mouse lncRNA genes

**Homo\_sapiens\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for human lncRNA genes

**Callithrix\_jacchus\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for marmoset lncRNA genes

**Danio\_rerio\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for zebrafish lncRNA genes

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for rat lncRNA genes

**Macaca\_mulatta\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for macaque lncRNA genes

**Gallus\_gallus\_lncRNA\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for chicken lncRNA genes

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl_malat1_list	<i>MALAT1 gene lists</i>
---------------------	--------------------------

---

**Description**

Ensembl IDs for MALAT1 (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_malat1\_list

**Format**

A list of seven vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_MALAT1\_ensembl** Ensembl ID for mouse Malat1

**Homo\_sapiens\_MALAT1\_ensembl** Ensembl ID for human MALAT1

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl\_mito\_id      *Ensembl Mito IDs*

---

**Description**

A list of ensembl ids for mitochondrial genes (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_mito\_id

**Format**

A list of six vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for mouse mitochondrial genes

**Homo\_sapiens\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for human mitochondrial genes

**Danio\_rerio\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for zebrafish mitochondrial genes

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for rat mitochondrial genes

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for fly mitochondrial genes

**Macaca\_mulatta\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for macaque mitochondrial genes

**Gallus\_gallus\_mito\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for chicken mitochondrial genes

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

ensembl\_ribo\_id      *Ensembl Ribo IDs*

---

**Description**

A list of ensembl ids for ribosomal genes (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

**Usage**

ensembl\_ribo\_id

**Format**

A list of eight vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for mouse ribosomal genes

**Homo\_sapiens\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for human ribosomal genes

**Callithrix\_jacchus\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for marmoset ribosomal genes

**Danio\_rerio\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for zebrafish ribosomal genes

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for rat ribosomal genes

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for fly ribosomal genes

**Macaca\_mulatta\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for macaque ribosomal genes

**Gallus\_gallus\_ribo\_ensembl** Ensembl IDs for chicken ribosomal genes

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

exAM\_gene\_list

*exAM gene lists*

---

**Description**

Gene symbols for exAM genes

**Usage**

exAM\_gene\_list

**Format**

A list of three vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_exAM\_union** Gene symbols for exAM genes from source publication (see below)

**Homo\_sapiens\_exAM\_union** Human gene symbols for homologous genes from mouse gene list

**Homo\_sapiens\_exAM\_micro** Human gene symbols for human microglia list

**Source**

Gene list is from: SI Table 22 Marsh et al., 2022 (Nature Neuroscience) from [doi:10.1038/s41593-022010228](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41593-022010228). See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

exAM\_Scoring

*Add exAM Gene List Module Scores***Description**

Adds module scores from exAM genes from mouse and human.

**Usage**

```
exAM_Scoring(
  seurat_object,
  species,
  exam_module_name = NULL,
  method = "Seurat",
  ensembl_ids = FALSE,
  assay = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  exclude_unfound = FALSE,
  seed = 1
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	object name.
species	Species of origin for given Seurat Object. Only accepted species are: mouse, human (name or abbreviation).
exam_module_name	name to use for the new meta.data column containing module scores.
method	method to use for module scoring, currently only "Seurat" is supported but more to be added. .
ensembl_ids	logical, whether feature names in the object are gene names or ensembl IDs (default is FALSE; set TRUE if feature names are ensembl IDs).
assay	Assay to use (default is the current object default assay).
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing meta.data columns. Default is FALSE meaning that function will abort if columns with the name provided to exam_module_name is present in meta.data slot.
exclude_unfound	logical, whether to exclude features not present in current object (default is FALSE).
seed	seed for reproducibility (default is 1).

**Value**

Seurat object

## References

Gene list is from: SI Table 22 Marsh et al., 2022 (Nature Neuroscience) from [doi:10.1038/s41593-022010228](https://doi.org/10.1038/s41593-022010228). See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
# Seurat  
seurat_object <- exAM_Scoring(seurat_object = seurat_object, species = "human")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Extract_Modality	<i>Extract multi-modal data into list by modality</i>
------------------	---

---

## Description

Reorganize multi-modal data after import with `Read10X()` or `scCustomize` read functions. Organizes sub-lists by data modality instead of by sample.

## Usage

```
Extract_Modality(matrix_list)
```

## Arguments

`matrix_list` list of matrices to split by modality

## Value

list of lists, with one sublist per data modality. Sub-list contain 1 matrix entry per sample

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
multi_mat <- Read10X(...)  
new_multi_mat <- Extract_Modality(matrix_list = multi_mat)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Extract\_Sample\_Meta     *Extract sample level meta.data*

---

### Description

Returns a by identity meta.data data.frame with one row per sample. Useful for downstream quick view of sample breakdown, meta data table creation, and/or use in pseudobulk analysis

### Usage

```
Extract_Sample_Meta(
  object,
  sample_col = "orig.ident",
  sample_name = deprecated(),
  variables_include = NULL,
  variables_exclude = NULL,
  include_all = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

object	Seurat or LIGER object
sample_col	meta.data column to use as sample. Output data.frame will contain one row per level or unique value in this variable.
sample_name	<b>[Soft-deprecated]</b> . See sample_name.
variables_include	@meta.data columns to keep in final data.frame. All other columns will be discarded. Default is NULL.
variables_exclude	columns to discard in final data.frame. Many cell level columns are irrelevant at the sample level (e.g., nFeature_RNA, percent_mito). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default parameter value is NULL but internally will set to discard nFeature_ASSAY(s), nCount_ASSAY(s), percent_mito, percent_ribo, percent_mito_ribo, and log10GenesPerUMI.</li> <li>• If sample level median values are desired for these type of variables the output of this function can be joined with output of <a href="#">Median_Stats</a>.</li> <li>• Set parameter to include_all = TRUE to prevent any columns from being excluded.</li> </ul>
include_all	logical, whether or not to include all object meta data columns in output data.frame. Default is FALSE.

### Value

Returns a data.frame with one row per sample\_name.



**Examples**

```

library(Seurat)
pbmc_small[["batch"]] <- sample(c("batch1", "batch2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

sample_meta <- Extract_Sample_Meta(object = pbmc_small, sample_name = "orig.ident")

# Only return specific columns from meta data (orig.ident and batch)
sample_meta2 <- Extract_Sample_Meta(object = pbmc_small, sample_name = "orig.ident",
variables_include = "batch")

# Return all columns from meta data
sample_meta3 <- Extract_Sample_Meta(object = pbmc_small, sample_name = "orig.ident",
include_all = TRUE)

```

---

Extract\_Top\_Markers     *Extract Top N Marker Genes*

---

**Description**

Extract vector gene list (or named gene vector) from data.frame results of [FindAllMarkers](#) or similar analysis.

**Usage**

```

Extract_Top_Markers(
  marker_dataframe,
  num_features = 10,
  num_genes = deprecated(),
  group_by = deprecated(),
  group.by = "cluster",
  rank_by = "avg_log2FC",
  gene_column = "gene",
  gene_rownames_to_column = FALSE,
  data_frame = FALSE,
  named_vector = TRUE,
  make_unique = FALSE
)

```

**Arguments**

marker\_dataframe     data.frame output from [FindAllMarkers](#) or similar analysis.

num\_features     number of features per group (e.g., cluster) to include in output list.

num\_genes     **[Deprecated]** soft-deprecated. See num\_features.

group\_by     **[Deprecated]** soft-deprecated. See group.by.

group.by	column name of marker_dataframe to group data by. Default is "cluster" based on <a href="#">FindAllMarkers</a> .
rank_by	column name of marker_dataframe to rank data by when selecting num_genes per group.by. Default is "avg_log2FC" based on <a href="#">FindAllMarkers</a> .
gene_column	column name of marker_dataframe that contains the gene IDs. Default is "gene" based on <a href="#">FindAllMarkers</a> .
gene_rownames_to_column	logical. Whether gene IDs are stored in rownames and should be moved to column. Default is FALSE.
data_frame	Logical, whether or not to return filtered data.frame of the original markers_dataframe or to return a vector of gene IDs. Default is FALSE.
named_vector	Logical, whether or not to name the vector of gene names that is returned by the function. If TRUE will name the vector using the column provided to group.by. Default is TRUE.
make_unique	Logical, whether an unnamed vector should return only unique values. Default is FALSE. Not applicable when data_frame = TRUE or named_vector = TRUE.

**Value**

filtered data.frame, vector, or named vector containing gene IDs.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
top10_genes <- Extract_Top_Markers(marker_dataframe = markers_results, num_genes = 10,
group.by = "cluster", rank_by = "avg_log2FC")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Factor\_Cor\_Plot

*Factor Correlation Plot*


---

**Description**

Plot positive correlations between gene loadings across W factor matrix in LIGER or feature loadings in reduction slot of Seurat object.

**Usage**

```
Factor_Cor_Plot(
  object,
  reduction = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  label = FALSE,
  label_threshold = 0.5,
```

```

    label_size = 5,
    plot_title = NULL,
    plot_type = "full",
    positive_only = FALSE,
    x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
    cluster = TRUE,
    cluster_rect = FALSE,
    cluster_rect_num = NULL,
    cluster_rect_col = NULL
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>object</code>	LIGER or Seurat object.
<code>reduction</code>	Seurat ONLY; name of dimensionality reduction containing NMF loadings.
<code>colors_use</code>	Color palette to use for correlation values. Default is <code>RColorBrewer::RdBu</code> if <code>positive_only = FALSE</code> . If <code>positive_only = TRUE</code> the default is <code>viridis</code> . Users can also supply vector of 3 colors (low, mid, high).
<code>label</code>	logical, whether to add correlation values to plot result.
<code>label_threshold</code>	threshold for adding correlation values if <code>label = TRUE</code> . Default is 0.5.
<code>label_size</code>	size of correlation labels
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot title.
<code>plot_type</code>	Controls plotting full matrix, or just the upper or lower triangles. Accepted values are: "full" (default), "upper", or "lower".
<code>positive_only</code>	logical, whether to limit the plotted values to only positive correlations (negative values set to 0); default is FALSE.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical, whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is TRUE.
<code>cluster</code>	logical, whether to cluster the plot using <code>hclust</code> (default TRUE). If FALSE factors are listed in numerical order.
<code>cluster_rect</code>	logical, whether to add rectangles around the clustered areas on plot, default is FALSE. Uses <code>cutree</code> to create groups.
<code>cluster_rect_num</code>	number of rectangles to add to the plot, default NULL. Value is provided to <code>k</code> in <code>cutree</code> .
<code>cluster_rect_col</code>	color to use for rectangles, default NULL (will set color automatically).

### Value

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Factor_Cor_Plot(object = obj)

## End(Not run)
```

---

FeaturePlot\_DualAssay *Customize FeaturePlot of two assays*

---

**Description**

Create Custom FeaturePlots and preserve scale (no binning) from same features in two assays simultaneously. Intended for plotting same modality present in two assays.

**Usage**

```
FeaturePlot_DualAssay(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  assay1 = "RAW",
  assay2 = "RNA",
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  colors_use_assay2 = NULL,
  na_color = "lightgray",
  order = TRUE,
  pt.size = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  na_cutoff = 1e-09,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  layer = "data",
  num_columns = NULL,
  alpha_exp = NULL,
  alpha_na_exp = NULL,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
features	Feature(s) to plot.
assay1	name of assay one. Default is "RAW" as featured in <a href="#">Create_CellBender_Merged_Seurat</a>
assay2	name of assay two Default is "RNA" as featured in <a href="#">Create_CellBender_Merged_Seurat</a>
colors_use	list of colors or color palette to use.

colors_use_assay2	optional, a second color palette to use for the second assay.
na_color	color to use for points below lower limit.
order	whether to move positive cells to the top (default = TRUE).
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
aspect_ratio	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
na_cutoff	Value to use as minimum expression cutoff. To set no cutoff set to NA.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to geom_scattermore(). Default is c(512, 512).
layer	Which layer to pull expression data from? Default is "data".
num_columns	Number of columns in plot layout. If number of features > 1 then num_columns dictates the number of columns in overall layout (num_columns = 1 means stacked layout & num_columns = 2 means adjacent layout).
alpha_exp	new alpha level to apply to expressing cell color palette (colors_use). Must be value between 0-1.
alpha_na_exp	new alpha level to apply to non-expressing cell color palette (na_color). Must be value between 0-1.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">FeaturePlot</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
FeaturePlot_DualAssay(seurat_object = object, features = "Cx3cr1", assay1 = "RAW", assay2 = "RNA",
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high, na_color = "lightgray")

## End(Not run)
```

---

FeaturePlot\_scCustom *Customize FeaturePlot*

---

**Description**

Create Custom FeaturePlots and preserve scale (no binning)

**Usage**

```

FeaturePlot_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  na_color = "lightgray",
  order = TRUE,
  pt.size = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  na_cutoff = 1e-09,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  split.by = NULL,
  split_collect = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  figure_plot = FALSE,
  num_columns = NULL,
  layer = "data",
  alpha_exp = NULL,
  alpha_na_exp = NULL,
  label = FALSE,
  label_feature_yaxis = FALSE,
  max.cutoff = NA,
  min.cutoff = NA,
  combine = TRUE,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Feature(s) to plot.
<code>colors_use</code>	list of colors or color palette to use.
<code>na_color</code>	color to use for points below lower limit.
<code>order</code>	whether to move positive cells to the top (default = TRUE).
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
<code>na_cutoff</code>	Value to use as minimum expression cutoff. This will be lowest value plotted use palette provided to <code>colors_use</code> . Leave as default value to plot only positive non-zero values using color scale and zero/negative values as NA. To plot all values using color palette set to NA.
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .

<code>split.by</code>	Variable in <code>@meta.data</code> to split the plot by.
<code>split_collect</code>	logical, whether to collect the legends/guides when plotting with <code>split.by</code> . Default is TRUE if one value is provided to features otherwise is set to FALSE.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>figure_plot</code>	logical. Whether to remove the axes and plot with legend on left of plot denoting axes labels. (Default is FALSE). Requires <code>split_seurat = TRUE</code> .
<code>num_columns</code>	Number of columns in plot layout.
<code>layer</code>	Which layer to pull expression data from? Default is "data".
<code>alpha_exp</code>	new alpha level to apply to expressing cell color palette ( <code>colors_use</code> ). Must be value between 0-1.
<code>alpha_na_exp</code>	new alpha level to apply to non-expressing cell color palette ( <code>na_color</code> ). Must be value between 0-1.
<code>label</code>	logical, whether to label the clusters. Default is FALSE.
<code>label_feature_yaxis</code>	logical, whether to place feature labels on secondary y-axis as opposed to above legend key. Default is FALSE. When setting <code>label_feature_yaxis = TRUE</code> the number of columns in plot output will automatically be set to the number of levels in <code>split.by</code> .
<code>min.cutoff, max.cutoff</code>	Vector of minimum and maximum cutoff values for each feature, may specify quantile in the form of 'q##' where '##' is the quantile (eg, 'q1', 'q10').
<code>combine</code>	Combine plots into a single <code>patchwork</code> d ggplot object. If FALSE, return a list of ggplot objects.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>FeaturePlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
FeaturePlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = "CD3E",
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high, na_color = "lightgray")
```

---

Features.liger

*Extract Features from LIGER Object*


---

**Description**

Extract all unique features from LIGER object

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
Features(x, by_dataset = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

```
x                LIGER object name.
by_dataset       logical, whether to return list with vector of features for each dataset in LIGER
                 object or to return single vector of unique features across all datasets in object
                 (default is FALSE; return vector of unique features)
...              Arguments passed to other methods
```

**Value**

vector or list depending on by\_dataset parameter

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# return single vector of all unique features
all_features <- Features(x = object, by_dataset = FALSE)

# return list of vectors containing features from each individual dataset in object
dataset_features <- Features(x = object, by_dataset = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

FeatureScatter\_scCustom

*Modified version of FeatureScatter*

---

**Description**

Create customized FeatureScatter plots with scCustomize defaults.

**Usage**

```
FeatureScatter_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  feature1 = NULL,
  feature2 = NULL,
  cells = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  group.by = NULL,
  split.by = NULL,
```



```

split_seurat = FALSE,
shuffle = TRUE,
aspect_ratio = NULL,
title_size = 15,
plot.cor = TRUE,
num_columns = NULL,
raster = NULL,
raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
color_seed = 123,
...
)

```

### Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
feature1	First feature to plot.
feature2	Second feature to plot.
cells	Cells to include on the scatter plot.
colors_use	color for the points on plot.
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
group.by	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, orig.ident). Default is active ident.
split.by	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
split_seurat	logical. Whether or not to display split plots like Seurat (shared y axis) or as individual plots in layout. Default is FALSE.
shuffle	logical, whether to randomly shuffle the order of points. This can be useful for crowded plots if points of interest are being buried. Default is TRUE.
aspect_ratio	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
title_size	size for plot title labels. Does NOT apply if split_seurat = TRUE.
plot.cor	Display correlation in plot subtitle (or title if split_seurat = TRUE).
num_columns	number of columns in final layout plot.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to geom_scattermore(). Default is c(512, 512).
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If colors_use = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">FeatureScatter</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)

pbmc_small$sample_id <- sample(c("sample1", "sample2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

FeatureScatter_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, feature1 = "nCount_RNA",
feature2 = "nFeature_RNA", split.by = "sample_id")
```

---

Feature\_Present

*Check if genes/features are present*

---

**Description**

Check if genes are present in object and return vector of found genes. Return warning messages for genes not found.

**Usage**

```
Feature_Present(
  data,
  features,
  case_check = TRUE,
  case_check_msg = TRUE,
  print_msg = TRUE,
  omit_warn = TRUE,
  return_none = FALSE,
  seurat_assay = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

data	Name of input data. Currently only data of classes: Seurat, liger, data.frame, dgCMatrx, dgTMatrix, tibble are accepted. Gene_IDs must be present in row-names of the data.
features	vector of features to check.
case_check	logical. Whether or not to check if features are found if the case is changed from the input list (Sentence case to Upper and vice versa). Default is TRUE.
case_check_msg	logical. Whether to print message to console if alternate case features are found in addition to inclusion in returned list. Default is TRUE.
print_msg	logical. Whether message should be printed if all features are found. Default is TRUE.

omit_warn	logical. Whether to print message about features that are not found in current object. Default is TRUE.
return_none	logical. Whether list of found vs. bad features should still be returned if no features are found. Default is FALSE.
seurat_assay	Name of assay to pull feature names from if data is Seurat Object. Default is NULL which will check against features from all assays present.

**Value**

A list of length 3 containing 1) found features, 2) not found features, 3) features found if case was modified.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
features <- Feature_Present(data = obj_name, features = DEG_list, print_msg = TRUE,
case_check = TRUE)
found_features <- features[[1]]

## End(Not run)
```

---

Fetch\_Meta

*Get meta data from object*


---

**Description**

Quick function to properly pull meta.data from objects.

**Usage**

```
Fetch_Meta(object, columns = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
Fetch_Meta(object, columns = NULL, ...)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Fetch_Meta(object, columns = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

object	Object of class Seurat or liger.
columns	optional, name(s) of columns to return. Default is NULL; returns all columns
...	Arguments passed to other methods

**Value**

A data.frame containing cell-level meta data

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
meta_data <- Fetch_Meta(object = pbmc_small)
head(meta_data, 5)
```

---

Find_Factor_Cor	<i>Find Factor Correlations</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Calculate correlations between gene loadings for all factors in liger or Seurat object.

**Usage**

```
Find_Factor_Cor(object, reduction = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

object	LIGER/Seurat object name.
reduction	reduction name to pull loadings for. Only valid if supplying a Seurat object.

**Value**

correlation matrix

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
factor_correlations <- Find_Factor_Cor(object = object)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Get_Reference_LIGER	<i>Get Reference Dataset</i>
---------------------	------------------------------

---

**Description**

Function to select reference dataset to use in liger based on meta data information

**Usage**

```
Get_Reference_LIGER(liger_object, meta_data_column, value)
```

**Arguments**

`liger_object` LIGER object name.  
`meta_data_column` meta data column to use for selecting largest dataset.  
`value` value from column `meta_data_column` to use for selecting largest dataset.

**Value**

dataset name as character

**Examples**

```

## Not run:
# standalone use
ref_dataset <- Get_Reference_LIGER(liger_object = object, meta_data_column = "Treatment",
value = "Ctrl")

# use within `quantileNorm`
object <- quantileNorm(object = object, reference = Get_Reference_LIGER(liger_object = object,
meta_data_column = "Treatment", value = "Ctrl"))

## End(Not run)

```

---

Hue\_Pal

*Hue\_Pal*


---

**Description**

Shortcut to `hue_pal` to return to `ggplot2` defaults if user desires, from `scales` package.

**Usage**

```
Hue_Pal(num_colors)
```

**Arguments**

`num_colors` number of colors to return in palette.

**Value**

hue color palette (as many colors as desired)

**Examples**

```

cols <- Hue_Pal(num_colors = 8)
PalettePlot(pal= cols)

```

---

`Idents.liger`*Extract or set default identities from object*

---

**Description**

Extract default identities from object in factor form.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'  
Idents(object, ...)  
  
## S3 replacement method for class 'liger'  
Idents(object, ...) <- value
```

**Arguments**

<code>object</code>	LIGER object name.
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed to other methods
<code>value</code>	name of column in cellMeta slot to set as new default cluster/ident

**Value**

factor  
object

**Note**

Use of `Idents<-` is only for setting new default ident/cluster from column already present in cellMeta. To add new column with new cluster values to cellMeta and set as default see [Rename\\_Clusters](#).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# Extract idents  
object_idents <- Idents(object = liger_object)  
  
## End(Not run)  
  
## Not run:  
# Set idents  
Idents(object = liger_object) <- "new_annotation"  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

ieg\_gene\_list                    *Immediate Early Gene (IEG) gene lists*

---

**Description**

Gene symbols for immediate early genes

**Usage**

```
ieg_gene_list
```

**Format**

A list of seven vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_IEGs** Gene symbols for IEGs from source publication (see below)

**Homo\_sapiens\_IEGs** Human gene symbols for homologous genes from mouse gene list

**Source**

Mouse gene list is from: SI Table 4 from [doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2017.09.026](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2017.09.026). Human gene list was compiled by first creating homologous gene list using biomaRt and then adding some manually curated homologs according to HGNC. See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

Iterate\_Barcode\_Rank\_Plot  
*Iterative Barcode Rank Plots*

---

**Description**

Read data, calculate DropletUtils::barcodeRanks, create barcode rank plots, and output single PDF output.

**Usage**

```
Iterate_Barcode_Rank_Plot(  
  dir_path_h5,  
  multi_directory = TRUE,  
  h5_filename = "raw_feature_bc_matrix.h5",  
  cellranger_multi = FALSE,  
  parallel = FALSE,  
  num_cores = NULL,  
  file_path = NULL,  
  file_name = NULL,  
  pt.size = 6,  
  raster_dpi = c(1024, 1024),
```

```

    plateau = NULL,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>dir_path_h5</code>	path to parent directory (if <code>multi_directory = TRUE</code> ) or directory containing all h5 files (if <code>multi_directory = FALSE</code> ).
<code>multi_directory</code>	logical, whether or not all h5 files are in their own subdirectories or in a single directory (default is <code>TRUE</code> ; each in own subdirectory (e.g. output from Cell Ranger)).
<code>h5_filename</code>	Either the file name of h5 file (if <code>multi_directory = TRUE</code> ) or the shared suffix (if <code>multi_directory = FALSE</code> )
<code>cellranger_multi</code>	logical, whether the outputs to be read are from Cell Ranger <code>multi</code> as opposed to Cell Ranger <code>count</code> (default is <code>FALSE</code> ). Only valid if <code>multi_directory = FALSE</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	logical, should files be read in parallel (default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>num_cores</code>	Number of cores to use in parallel if <code>parallel = TRUE</code> .
<code>file_path</code>	file path to use for saving PDF output.
<code>file_name</code>	Name of PDF output file.
<code>pt.size</code>	point size for plotting, default is 6.
<code>raster_dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(1024, 1024)</code> .
<code>plateau</code>	numerical values at which to add vertical line designating estimated empty droplet plateau (default is <code>NULL</code> ). Must be vector equal in length to number of samples.
<code>...</code>	Additional parameters passed to <code>Read10X_h5_Multi_Directory</code> or <code>Read10X_h5_GEO</code> .

### Value

pdf document

### Examples

```

## Not run:
Iterate_Barcode_Rank_Plot(dir_path_h5 = "H5_PATH/", multi_directory = TRUE,
h5_filename = "raw_feature_bc_matrix", parallel = TRUE, num_cores = 12, file_path = "OUTPUT_PATH",
file_name = "Barcode_Rank_Plots")

## End(Not run)

```



---

Iterate\_Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot  
*Iterate Cluster Highlight Plot*

---

**Description**

Iterate the create plots with cluster of interest highlighted across all cluster (active.idents) in given Seurat Object

**Usage**

```
Iterate_Cluster_Highlight_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  highlight_color = "dodgerblue",
  background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  dpi = 600,
  raster = NULL,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
highlight_color	Color to highlight cells (default "navy"). Can provide either single color to use for all clusters/plots or a vector of colors equal to the number of clusters to use (in order) for the clusters/plots.
background_color	non-highlighted cell colors.
pt.size	point size for both highlighted cluster and background.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix to append after sample name.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE). 'file_type' must be .pdf.

output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
dpi	dpi for image saving.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
...	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Iterate_Cluster_Highlight_Plot(seurat_object = object, highlight_color = "navy",
background_color = "lightgray", file_path = "path/", file_name = "name", file_type = ".pdf",
single_pdf = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_DimPlot\_bySample

*Iterate DimPlot By Sample*

---

**Description**

Iterate DimPlot by orig.ident column from Seurat object metadata

**Usage**

```
Iterate_DimPlot_bySample(
  seurat_object,
  sample_column = "orig.ident",
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  dpi = 600,
  color = "black",
  no_legend = TRUE,
  title_prefix = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  dims = c(1, 2),
  pt.size = NULL,
```

```

    raster = NULL,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
sample_column	name of meta.data column containing sample names/ids (default is "orig.ident").
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix to append after sample name.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE). 'file_type' must be .pdf
output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
dpi	dpi for image saving.
color	color scheme to use.
no_legend	logical, whether or not to include plot legend, default is TRUE.
title_prefix	Value that should be used for plot title prefix if no_legend = TRUE. If NULL the value of meta_data_column will be used. Default is NULL.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (default is object default).
dims	Dimensions to plot.
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">DimPlot</a> .

### Value

A ggplot object

### Examples

```

## Not run:
Iterate_DimPlot_bySample(seurat_object = object, file_path = "plots/", file_name = "tsne",
file_type = ".jpg", dpi = 600, color = "black")

## End(Not run)

```

---

 Iterate\_FeaturePlot\_scCustom

*Iterative Plotting of Gene Lists using Custom FeaturePlots*


---

## Description

Create and Save plots for Gene list with Single Command

## Usage

```
Iterate_FeaturePlot_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  na_color = "lightgray",
  na_cutoff = 1e-09,
  split.by = NULL,
  order = TRUE,
  return_plots = FALSE,
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  features_per_page = 1,
  num_columns = NULL,
  landscape = TRUE,
  dpi = 600,
  pt.size = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  raster = NULL,
  alpha_exp = NULL,
  alpha_na_exp = NULL,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
features	vector of features to plot. If a named vector is provided then the names for each gene will be incorporated into plot title if <code>single_pdf = TRUE</code> or into file name if <code>FALSE</code> .
colors_use	color scheme to use.
na_color	color for non-expressed cells.
na_cutoff	Value to use as minimum expression cutoff. To set no cutoff set to NA.

split.by	Variable in @meta.data to split the plot by.
order	whether to move positive cells to the top (default = TRUE).
return_plots	logical. Whether to return plots to list instead of saving them to file(s). Default is FALSE.
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix and file extension.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE).
output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
features_per_page	numeric, number of features to plot on single page if single_pdf = TRUE. Default is 1.
num_columns	Number of columns in plot layout (only applicable if single_pdf = TRUE AND features_per_page > 1).
landscape	logical, when plotting multiple features per page in single PDF whether to use landscape or portrait page dimensions (default is TRUE).
dpi	dpi for image saving.
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
alpha_exp	new alpha level to apply to expressing cell color palette (colors_use). Must be value between 0-1.
alpha_na_exp	new alpha level to apply to non-expressing cell color palette (na_color). Must be value between 0-1.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">FeaturePlot</a> .

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Iterate_FeaturePlot_scCustom(seurat_object = object, features = DEG_list,
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high, na_color = "lightgray", file_path = "plots/",
  file_name = "tsne", file_type = ".jpg", dpi = 600)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_Meta\_Highlight\_Plot  
*Iterate Meta Highlight Plot*

---

**Description**

Iterate the create plots with meta data variable of interest highlighted.

**Usage**

```
Iterate_Meta_Highlight_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  meta_data_column,
  new_meta_order = NULL,
  meta_data_sort = TRUE,
  highlight_color = "navy",
  background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = NULL,
  no_legend = FALSE,
  title_prefix = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  dpi = 600,
  raster = NULL,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>meta_data_column</code>	Name of the column in <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> slot to pull value from for highlighting.
<code>new_meta_order</code>	The order in which to plot each level within <code>meta_data_column</code> if <code>single_PDF</code> is TRUE.
<code>meta_data_sort</code>	logical. Whether or not to sort and relevel the levels in <code>meta_data_column</code> if <code>single_PDF</code> is TRUE. Default is TRUE.
<code>highlight_color</code>	Color to highlight cells (default "navy"). Can provide either single color to use for all clusters/plots or a vector of colors equal to the number of clusters to use (in order) for the clusters/plots.

background_color	non-highlighted cell colors.
pt.size	point size for both highlighted cluster and background.
no_legend	logical, whether or not to remove plot legend and move to plot title. Default is FALSE.
title_prefix	Value that should be used for plot title prefix if no_legend = TRUE. If NULL the value of meta_data_column will be used. Default is NULL.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix to append after sample name.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE). "file_type" must be .pdf.
output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
dpi	dpi for image saving.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
...	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Iterate_Meta_Highlight_Plot(seurat_object = object, meta_data_column = "sample_id",
highlight_color = "navy", background_color = "lightgray", file_path = "path/",
file_name = "name", file_type = ".pdf", single_pdf = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_PC>Loading\_Plots

*Iterate PC Loading Plots*

---

**Description**

Plot PC Heatmaps and Dim Loadings for exploratory analysis

**Usage**

```
Iterate_PC>Loading_Plots(  
  seurat_object,  
  dims_plot = NULL,  
  file_path = NULL,  
  name_prefix = NULL,  
  file_name = "PC>Loading_Plots.pdf",  
  return_plots = FALSE  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
dims_plot	number of PCs to plot (integer). Default is all dims present in PCA.
file_path	directory file path to save file.
name_prefix	prefix for file name (optional).
file_name	suffix for file name. Default is "PC>Loading_Plots".
return_plots	Whether to return the plot list (Default is FALSE). Must assign to environment to save plot list.

**Value**

A list of plots outputted as pdf

**See Also**

[PCHeatmap](#) and [VizDimLoadings](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
Iterate_PC>Loading_Plots(seurat_object = seurat, dims_plot = 25, file_path = "plots/")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Custom

*Iterative Plotting of Gene Lists using Custom Density Plots*

---

**Description**

Create and save plots for gene list with single command. Requires Nebulosa package from Bioconductor.



**Usage**

```
Iterate_Plot_Density_Custom(
  seurat_object,
  gene_list,
  viridis_palette = "magma",
  custom_palette = NULL,
  pt.size = 1,
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  dpi = 600,
  reduction = NULL,
  combine = TRUE,
  joint = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>gene_list</code>	vector of genes to plot. If a named vector is provided then the names for each gene will be incorporated into plot title if <code>single_pdf = TRUE</code> or into file name if <code>FALSE</code> .
<code>viridis_palette</code>	color scheme to use.
<code>custom_palette</code>	color for non-expressed cells.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>file_path</code>	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
<code>file_name</code>	name suffix and file extension.
<code>file_type</code>	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
<code>single_pdf</code>	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = <code>FALSE</code> ). "file_type" must be .pdf.
<code>output_width</code>	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>output_height</code>	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>dpi</code>	dpi for image saving.
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if <code>NULL</code> then defaults to Object default)
<code>combine</code>	Create a single plot? If <code>FALSE</code> , a list with ggplot objects is returned.
<code>joint</code>	<code>NULL</code> . This function only supports <code>joint = FALSE</code> . Leave as <code>NULL</code> to generate plots. To iterate joint plots see function: <code>Iterate_Plot_Density_Joint</code> .
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>plot_density</code> .

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
Iterate_Plot_Density_Custom(seurat_object = object, gene_list = DEG_list, viridis_palette = "magma",  
file_path = "plots/", file_name = "_density_plots", file_type = ".jpg", dpi = 600)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Joint

*Iterative Plotting of Gene Lists using Custom Joint Density Plots*

---

**Description**

Create and save plots for gene list with single command. Requires Nebulosa package from Bioconductor.

**Usage**

```
Iterate_Plot_Density_Joint(  
  seurat_object,  
  gene_list,  
  viridis_palette = "magma",  
  custom_palette = NULL,  
  pt.size = 1,  
  file_path = NULL,  
  file_name = NULL,  
  file_type = NULL,  
  single_pdf = FALSE,  
  output_width = NULL,  
  output_height = NULL,  
  dpi = 600,  
  reduction = NULL,  
  combine = TRUE,  
  joint = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat\_object    Seurat object name.

gene_list	a list of vectors of genes to plot jointly. Each entry in the list will be plotted for the joint density. All entries in list must be greater than 2 features. If a named list is provided then the names for each list entry will be incorporated into plot title if single_pdf = TRUE or into file name if FALSE.
viridis_palette	color scheme to use.
custom_palette	color for non-expressed cells.
pt.size	Adjust point size for plotting.
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix and file extension.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE). "file_type" must be .pdf.
output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
dpi	dpi for image saving.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default)
combine	Create a single plot? If FALSE, a list with ggplot objects is returned.
joint	NULL. This function only supports joint = FALSE. Leave as NULL to generate plots. To iterate joint plots see function: Iterate_Plot_Density_Joint.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">plot_density</a> .

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Iterate_Plot_Density_Joint(seurat_object = object, gene_list = DEG_list, viridis_palette = "magma",
file_path = "plots/", file_name = "joint_plots", file_type = ".jpg", dpi = 600)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Iterate\_VlnPlot\_scCustom

*Iterative Plotting of Gene Lists using VlnPlot\_scCustom*

---

**Description**

Create and Save plots for Gene list with Single Command

**Usage**

```
Iterate_VlnPlot_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  colors_use = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  group.by = NULL,
  split.by = NULL,
  file_path = NULL,
  file_name = NULL,
  file_type = NULL,
  single_pdf = FALSE,
  output_width = NULL,
  output_height = NULL,
  raster = NULL,
  dpi = 600,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
features	vector of features to plot.
colors_use	color palette to use for plotting. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with shuffle = TRUE both from DiscretePalette_scCustomize.
pt.size	point size for plotting.
group.by	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) plot by (for example, orig.ident); default is the current active.ident of the object.
split.by	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix and file extension.
file_type	File type to save output as. Must be one of following: ".pdf", ".png", ".tiff", ".jpeg", or ".svg".
single_pdf	saves all plots to single PDF file (default = FALSE). "file_type" must be .pdf.
output_width	the width (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
output_height	the height (in inches) for output page size. Default is NULL.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
dpi	dpi for image saving.
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If colors_use = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.

color\_seed      random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors\_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

...              Extra parameters passed to [VlnPlot](#).

**Value**

Saved plots

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Iterate_VlnPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = object, features = DEG_list, colors = color_list,
file_path = "plots/", file_name = "_vln", file_type = ".jpg", dpi = 600)

## End(Not run)
```

---

JCO\_Four

*Four Color Palette (JCO)*

---

**Description**

Shortcut to a specific JCO 4 color palette from ggsci package.

**Usage**

```
JCO_Four()
```

**Value**

4 color palette from the JCO ggsci palette

**References**

Selection of colors from the JCO palette from ggsci being called through paletteer. See ggsci for more info on palettes <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=ggsci>

**Examples**

```
cols <- JCO_Four()
PalettePlot(pal= cols)
```

---

lncRNA_gene_list	<i>lncRNA gene list</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

A list of gene symbol ids for lncRNA genes (Ensembl version 113; 04/08/2025)

**Usage**

```
lncRNA_gene_list
```

**Format**

A list of six vectors

**Mus\_musculus\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for mouse lncRNA genes

**Homo\_sapiens\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for human lncRNA genes

**Danio\_rerio\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for zebrafish lncRNA genes

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for rat lncRNA genes

**Macaca\_mulatta\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for macaque lncRNA genes

**Gallus\_gallus\_lncRNA** Ensembl IDs for chicken lncRNA genes

**Source**

See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

MAD_Stats	<i>Median Absolute Deviation Statistics</i>
-----------	---

---

**Description**

Get quick values for X x median absolute deviation for Genes, UMIs, %mito per cell grouped by meta.data variable.

**Usage**

```
MAD_Stats(
  seurat_object,
  group.by = "orig.ident",
  default_var = TRUE,
  mad_var = NULL,
  mad_num = 2
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
group.by	meta data column to classify samples (default = "orig.ident").
default_var	logical. Whether to include the default meta.data variables of: "nCount_RNA", "nFeature_RNA", "percent_mito", "percent_ribo", "percent_mito_ribo", and "log10GenesPerUMI" in addition to variables supplied to mad_var.
mad_var	Column(s) in @meta.data to calculate medians for in addition to defaults. Must be of class() integer or numeric.
mad_num	integer value to multiply the MAD in returned data.frame (default is 2). Often helpful when calculating a outlier range to base of of median + (X*MAD).

**Value**

A data.frame.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
mad_stats <- MAD_Stats(seurat_object = obj, group.by = "orig.ident")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Map\_New\_Meta

---

*Create new variable from categories in meta.data*


---

**Description**

Designed for fast variable creation when a new variable is going to be created from existing variable. For example, mapping multiple samples to experimental condition.

**Usage**

```
Map_New_Meta(seurat_object, from, new_col = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	name of Seurat object
from	current column in meta.data to map from
new_col	name of new column in meta.data to add new mapped variable. If NULL (default) will return the variable. If name provided will return Seurat object with new variable added.
...	Mapping criteria, argument names are original existing categories in the from column and values are new categories in the new variable.

**Value**

if new\_col = NULL returns factor else returns Seurat object with new variable added.

**References**

This function is slightly modified version of LIGER function `mapCellMeta` to allow functionality with Seurat objects. <https://github.com/welch-lab/liger>. (License: GPL-3).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
seurat_object <- Map_New_Meta(seurat_object, from = "orig.ident", new_col = "Treatment",
"1" = "Ctrl", "2" = "Treated", "3" = "Treated", "4" = "Ctrl")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Median\_Stats

*Median Statistics*

---

**Description**

Get quick values for median Genes, UMIs, %mito per cell grouped by meta.data variable.

**Usage**

```
Median_Stats(
  seurat_object,
  group.by = "orig.ident",
  default_var = TRUE,
  median_var = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
group.by	meta data column to classify samples (default = "orig.ident").
default_var	logical. Whether to include the default meta.data variables of: "nCount_RNA", "nFeature_RNA", "percent_mito", "percent_ribo", "percent_mito_ribo", and "log10GenesPerUMI" in addition to variables supplied to median_var.
median_var	Column(s) in @meta.data to calculate medians for in addition to defaults. Must be of class() integer or numeric.

**Value**

A data.frame.



## Examples

```
## Not run:
med_stats <- Median_Stats(seurat_object - obj, group.by = "orig.ident")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Merge\_Seurat\_List      *Merge a list of Seurat Objects*

---

## Description

Enables easy merge of a list of Seurat Objects. See [merge](#) for more information,

## Usage

```
Merge_Seurat_List(
  list_seurat,
  add.cell.ids = NULL,
  merge.data = TRUE,
  project = "SeuratProject"
)
```

## Arguments

<code>list_seurat</code>	list composed of multiple Seurat Objects.
<code>add.cell.ids</code>	A character vector of equal length to the number of objects in <code>list_seurat</code> . Appends the corresponding values to the start of each objects' cell names. See <a href="#">merge</a> .
<code>merge.data</code>	Merge the data slots instead of just merging the counts (which requires renormalization). This is recommended if the same normalization approach was applied to all objects. See <a href="#">merge</a> .
<code>project</code>	Project name for the Seurat object. See <a href="#">merge</a> .

## Value

A Seurat Object

## Examples

```
## Not run:
object_list <- list(obj1, obj2, obj3, ...)
merged_object <- Merge_Seurat_List(list_seurat = object_list)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Merge\_Sparse\_Data\_All *Merge a list of Sparse Matrices*

---

## Description

Enables easy merge of a list of sparse matrices

## Usage

```
Merge_Sparse_Data_All(  
  matrix_list,  
  add_cell_ids = NULL,  
  prefix = TRUE,  
  cell_id_delimiter = "_"  
)
```

## Arguments

`matrix_list` list of matrices to merge.

`add_cell_ids` a vector of sample ids to add as prefix to cell barcode during merge.

`prefix` logical. Whether `add_cell_ids` should be added as prefix to current cell barcodes/names or as suffix to current cell barcodes/names. Default is TRUE, add as prefix.

`cell_id_delimiter`  
The delimiter to use when adding cell id prefix/suffix. Default is "\_".

## Value

A sparse Matrix

## References

Original function is part of LIGER package <https://github.com/welch-lab/liger/blob/master/R/mergeObject.R> (License: GPL-3). Function was modified for use in scCustomize (add progress bar, prefix vs. suffix, and delimiter options).

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
data_list <- Read10X_GEO(...)  
merged <- Merge_Sparse_Data_All(matrix_list = data_list, add_cell_ids = names(data_list),  
  prefix = TRUE, cell_id_delimiter = "_")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

`Merge_Sparse_Multimodal_All`*Merge a list of Sparse Matrices contain multi-modal data.*

---

**Description**

Enables easy merge of a list of sparse matrices for multi-modal data.

**Usage**

```
Merge_Sparse_Multimodal_All(  
  matrix_list,  
  add_cell_ids = NULL,  
  prefix = TRUE,  
  cell_id_delimiter = "_"  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>matrix_list</code>	list of matrices to merge.
<code>add_cell_ids</code>	a vector of sample ids to add as prefix to cell barcode during merge.
<code>prefix</code>	logical. Whether <code>add_cell_ids</code> should be added as prefix to current cell barcodes/names or as suffix to current cell barcodes/names. Default is TRUE, add as prefix.
<code>cell_id_delimiter</code>	The delimiter to use when adding cell id prefix/suffix. Default is "_".

**Value**

A list containing one sparse matrix for each modality

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
data_list <- Read10X_GEO(...)  
merged_list <- Merge_Sparse_Multimodal_All(matrix_list = data_list, add_cell_ids = names(data_list),  
prefix = TRUE, cell_id_delimiter = "_")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Meta\_Highlight\_Plot    *Meta Highlight Plot*

---

### Description

Create Plot with meta data variable of interest highlighted

### Usage

```
Meta_Highlight_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  meta_data_column,
  meta_data_highlight,
  highlight_color = NULL,
  background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = NULL,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  figure_plot = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  label = FALSE,
  split.by = NULL,
  split_seurat = FALSE,
  reduction = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>meta_data_column</code>	Name of the column in <code>seurat_object@meta.data</code> slot to pull value from for highlighting.
<code>meta_data_highlight</code>	Name of variable(s) within <code>meta_data_name</code> to highlight in the plot.
<code>highlight_color</code>	Color to highlight cells (default "navy").
<code>background_color</code>	non-highlighted cell colors.
<code>pt.size</code>	point size for both highlighted cluster and background.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>figure_plot</code>	logical. Whether to remove the axes and plot with legend on left of plot denoting axes labels. (Default is FALSE). Requires <code>split_seurat = TRUE</code> .

raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
label	Whether to label the highlighted meta data variable(s). Default is FALSE.
split.by	Variable in <code>@meta.data</code> to split the plot by.
split_seurat	logical. Whether or not to display split plots like Seurat (shared y axis) or as individual plots in layout. Default is FALSE.
reduction	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
...	Extra parameters passed to <code>DimPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
pbmc_small$sample_id <- sample(c("sample1", "sample2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

Meta_Highlight_Plot(seurat_object = pbmc_small, meta_data_column = "sample_id",
  meta_data_highlight = "sample1", highlight_color = "gold", background_color = "lightgray",
  pt.size = 2)
```

---

Meta\_Numeric

*Check if meta data columns are numeric*

---

**Description**

Check if any present meta data columns are numeric and returns vector of valid numeric columns. Issues warning message if any columns not in numeric form.

**Usage**

```
Meta_Numeric(data)
```

**Arguments**

data            a data.frame contain meta.data.

**Value**

vector of meta data columns that are numeric.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
numeric_meta_columns <- Meta_Numeric(data = meta_data)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Meta_Present	<i>Check if meta data are present</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Check if meta data columns are present in object and return vector of found columns Return warning messages for meta data columns not found.

**Usage**

```
Meta_Present(
  object,
  meta_col_names,
  print_msg = TRUE,
  omit_warn = TRUE,
  return_none = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

object	Seurat or Liger object name.
meta_col_names	vector of column names to check.
print_msg	logical. Whether message should be printed if all features are found. Default is TRUE.
omit_warn	logical. Whether to print message about features that are not found in current object. Default is TRUE.
return_none	logical. Whether list of found vs. bad features should still be returned if no meta_col_names are found. Default is FALSE.

**Value**

vector of meta data columns that are present

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
meta_variables <- Meta_Present(object = obj_name, meta_col_names = "percent_mito", print_msg = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Meta\_Remove\_Seurat      *Remove meta data columns containing Seurat Defaults*

---

### Description

Remove any columns from new meta\_data data.frame in preparation for adding back to Seurat Object

### Usage

```
Meta_Remove_Seurat(  
  meta_data,  
  seurat_object,  
  barcodes_to_rownames = FALSE,  
  barcodes_colname = "barcodes"  
)
```

### Arguments

meta\_data      data.frame containing meta data.

seurat\_object    object name.

barcodes\_to\_rownames      logical, are barcodes present as column and should they be moved to rownames (to be compatible with Seurat::AddMetaData). Default is FALSE.

barcodes\_colname      name of barcodes column in meta\_data. Required if barcodes\_to\_rownames = TRUE.

### Value

data.frame with only new columns.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
new_meta <- Meta_Remove_Seurat(meta_data = meta_data_df, seurat_object = object)  
object <- AddMetaData(object = object, metadata = new_meta)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

 Move\_Legend

*Move Legend Position*


---

### Description

Shortcut for thematic modification to move legend position.

### Usage

```
Move_Legend(position = "right", ...)
```

### Arguments

position	valid position to move legend. Default is "right".
...	extra arguments passed to <code>ggplot2::theme()</code> .

### Value

Returns a list-like object of class *theme*.

### Examples

```
# Generate a plot and customize theme
library(ggplot2)
df <- data.frame(x = rnorm(n = 100, mean = 20, sd = 2), y = rbinom(n = 100, size = 100, prob = 0.2))
p <- ggplot(data = df, mapping = aes(x = x, y = y)) + geom_point(mapping = aes(color = 'red'))
p + Move_Legend("left")
```

---

 msigdb\_qc\_ensembl\_list

*QC Gene Lists*


---

### Description

Ensembl IDs for qc percentages from MSigDB database. The gene sets are from 3 MSigDB lists: "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION", "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS", and "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR". (Ensembl version 112; 4/29/2024)

### Usage

```
msigdb_qc_ensembl_list
```



**Format**

A list of 21 vectors

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for human

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for human

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for human

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for mouse

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for mouse

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for mouse

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for rat

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for rat

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for rat

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for fly

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for fly

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for fly

**Dario\_erio\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for zebrafish

**Dario\_erio\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for zebrafish

**Dario\_erio\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for zebrafish

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for macaque

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for macaque

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for macaque

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for chicken

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for chicken

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for chicken

**Source**

MSigDB gene sets (ensembl IDs) via msigdb package <https://cran.r-project.org/package=msigdb>. See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

msigdb\_qc\_gene\_list    *QC Gene Lists*


---

### Description

Gene symbols for qc percentages from MSigDB database. The gene sets are from 3 MSigDB lists: "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION", "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS", and "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR".

### Usage

```
msigdb_qc_gene_list
```

### Format

A list of 21 vectors

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for human

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for human

**Homo\_sapiens\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for human

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for mouse

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for mouse

**Mus\_musculus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for mouse

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for rat

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for rat

**Rattus\_norvegicus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for rat

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for fly

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for fly

**Drosophila\_melanogaster\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for fly

**Dario\_rerio\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for zebrafish

**Dario\_rerio\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for zebrafish

**Dario\_rerio\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for zebrafish

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for macaque

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for macaque

**Macaca\_mulatta\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for macaque

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_oxphos** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_OXIDATIVE\_PHOSPHORYLATION" list for chicken

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_apop** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_APOPTOSIS" list for chicken

**Gallus\_gallus\_msigdb\_dna\_repair** Genes in msigdb "HALLMARK\_DNA\_REPAIR" list for chicken

## Source

MSigDB gene sets (gene symbols) via msigdb package <https://cran.r-project.org/package=msigdb>. See data-raw directory for scripts used to create gene list.

---

NavyAndOrange

*Navy and Orange Dual Color Palette*

---

## Description

Shortcut to navy orange color plot

## Usage

```
NavyAndOrange(flip_order = FALSE)
```

## Arguments

`flip_order` logical, whether to flip the order of colors.

## Value

Navy orange palette

## Examples

```
cols <- NavyAndOrange()  
PalettePlot(pal= cols)
```

---

PalettePlot

*Plot color palette in viewer*

---

### Description

Plots given color vector/palette in viewer to evaluate palette before plotting on data.

### Usage

```
PalettePlot(pal = NULL, label_color_num = NULL)
```

### Arguments

`pal` a vector of colors (either named colors or hex codes).  
`label_color_num` logical, whether or not to numerically label the colors in output plot. Default is TRUE if number of colors in `pal` is less than 75 and FALSE if greater than 75.

### Value

Plot of all colors in supplied palette/vector

### References

Adapted from colorway package `build_palette` internals (License: GPL-3). <https://github.com/hypercompetent/colorway>.

### Examples

```
pal <- DiscretePalette_scCustomize(num_colors = 36, palette = "varibow")  
PalettePlot(pal = pal)
```

---

PC\_Plotting

*PC Plots*

---

### Description

Plot PC Heatmaps and Dim Loadings for exploratory analysis. Plots a single Heatmap and Gene Loading Plot. Used for `PC>Loading/Plots` function.

### Usage

```
PC_Plotting(seurat_object, dim_number)
```

**Arguments**

seurat\_object    Seurat Object.  
dim\_number        A single dim to plot (integer).

**Value**

A plot of PC heatmap and gene loadings for single

**See Also**

[PCHeatmap](#) and [VizDimLoadings](#)

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
PC_Plotting(seurat_object = pbmc_small, dim_number = 1)
```

---

Percent\_Expressing    *Calculate percent of expressing cells*

---

**Description**

Calculates the percent of cells that express a given set of features by various grouping factors

**Usage**

```
Percent_Expressing(  
  seurat_object,  
  features,  
  threshold = 0,  
  group.by = NULL,  
  split.by = NULL,  
  entire_object = FALSE,  
  layer = "data",  
  assay = NULL  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat\_object    Seurat object name.  
features          Feature(s) to plot.  
threshold        Expression threshold to use for calculation of percent expressing (default is 0).  
group.by         Factor to group the cells by.  
split.by         Factor to split the groups by.

entire\_object logical (default = FALSE). Whether to calculate percent of expressing cells across the entire object as opposed to by cluster or by group.by variable.

layer Which layer to pull expression data from? Default is "data".

assay Assay to pull feature data from. Default is active assay.

### Value

A data.frame

### References

Part of code is modified from Seurat package as used by [DotPlot](#) to generate values to use for plotting. Source code can be found here: <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat/blob/4e868fcde49dc0a3df47f94f5fb54R/visualization.R#L3391> (License: GPL-3).

### Examples

```
## Not run:
percent_stats <- Percent_Expressing(seurat_object = object, features = "Cx3cr1", threshold = 0)

## End(Not run)
```

---

plotFactors\_scCustom *Customized version of plotFactors*

---

### Description

Modified and optimized version of plotFactors function from LIGER package.

### Usage

```
plotFactors_scCustom(
  liger_object,
  num_genes = 8,
  colors_use_factors = NULL,
  colors_use_dimreduc = c("lemonchiffon", "red"),
  pt.size_factors = 1,
  pt.size_dimreduc = 1,
  reduction = "UMAP",
  reduction_label = "UMAP",
  plot_legend = TRUE,
  raster = TRUE,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  order = FALSE,
  plot_dimreduc = TRUE,
  save_plots = TRUE,
```

```

    file_path = NULL,
    file_name = NULL,
    return_plots = FALSE,
    cells.highlight = NULL,
    reorder_datasets = NULL,
    ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
    color_seed = 123
)

```

## Arguments

liger_object	liger liger_object. Need to perform clustering and factorization before calling this function
num_genes	Number of genes to display for each factor (Default 8).
colors_use_factors	colors to use for plotting factor loadings By default datasets will be plotted using "varibow" with shuffle = TRUE from both from <a href="#">DiscretePalette_scCustomize</a> .
colors_use_dimreduc	colors to use for plotting factor loadings on dimensionality reduction coordinates (tSNE/UMAP). Default is c('lemonchiffon', 'red'),
pt.size_factors	Adjust point size for plotting in the factor plots.
pt.size_dimreduc	Adjust point size for plotting in dimensionality reduction plots.
reduction	Name of dimensionality reduction to use for plotting. Default is "UMAP". Only for newer style liger objects.
reduction_label	What to label the x and y axes of resulting plots. LIGER does not store name of technique and therefore needs to be set manually. Default is "UMAP". Only for older style liger objects.
plot_legend	logical, whether to plot the legend on factor loading plots, default is TRUE. Helpful if number of datasets is large to avoid crowding the plot with legend.
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 cells.
raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to geom_scattermore(). Default is c(512, 512).
order	logical. Whether to plot higher loading cells on top of cells with lower loading values in the dimensionality reduction plots (Default = FALSE).
plot_dimreduc	logical. Whether to plot factor loadings on dimensionality reduction coordinates. Default is TRUE.
save_plots	logical. Whether to save plots. Default is TRUE
file_path	directory file path and/or file name prefix. Defaults to current wd.
file_name	name suffix to append after sample name.
return_plots	logical. Whether or not to return plots to the environment. (Default is FALSE)

`cells.highlight` Names of specific cells to highlight in plot (black) (default NULL).

`reorder_datasets` New order to plot datasets in for the factor plots if different from current factor level order in cell.data slot. Only for older style liger objects.

`ggplot_default_colors` logical. If `colors_use_factors = NULL`, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "varibow" palette.

`color_seed` random seed for the palette shuffle if `colors_use_factors = NULL`. Default = 123.

**Value**

A list of ggplot/patchwork objects and/or PDF file.

**Author(s)**

Velina Kozareva (Original code for modified function), Sam Marsh (Added/modified functionality)

**References**

Based on plotFactors functionality from original LIGER package.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
plotFactors_scCustom(liger_object = liger_obj, return_plots = FALSE, plot_dimreduc = TRUE,
raster = FALSE, save_plots = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Plot\_Cells\_per\_Sample *Plot Number of Cells/Nuclei per Sample*

---

**Description**

Plot of total cell or nuclei number per sample grouped by another meta data variable.

**Usage**

```
Plot_Cells_per_Sample(
  seurat_object,
  sample_col = "orig.ident",
  group.by = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  plot_title = "Cells/Nuclei per Sample",
```



```
  y_axis_label = "Number of Cells",
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  legend_title = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  color_seed = 123
)
```

### Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
sample_col	Specify which column in meta.data specifies sample ID (i.e. orig.ident).
group.by	Column in meta.data slot to group results by (i.e. "Treatment").
colors_use	List of colors or color palette to use.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if group.by is not NULL. Default is 1.
plot_title	Plot title.
y_axis_label	Label for y axis.
x_axis_label	Label for x axis.
legend_title	Label for plot legend.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

### Value

A ggplot object

### Examples

```
## Not run:
Plot_Cells_per_Sample(seurat_object = obj, sample_col = "orig.ident", group.by = "Treatment")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Plot\_Density\_Custom    *Nebulosa Density Plot*

---

### Description

Allow for customization of Nebulosa plot\_density. Requires Nebulosa package from Bioconductor.

**Usage**

```
Plot_Density_Custom(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  joint = FALSE,
  viridis_palette = "magma",
  custom_palette = NULL,
  pt.size = 1,
  aspect_ratio = NULL,
  reduction = NULL,
  combine = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Features to plot.
<code>joint</code>	logical. Whether to return joint density plot. Default is FALSE.
<code>viridis_palette</code>	default viridis palette to use (must be one of: "viridis", "magma", "cividis", "inferno", "plasma"). Default is "magma".
<code>custom_palette</code>	non-default color palette to be used in place of default viridis options.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
<code>combine</code>	Create a single plot? If FALSE, a list with ggplot objects is returned.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>plot_density</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
library(Seurat)
Plot_Density_Custom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = "CD3E")

## End(Not run)
```

---

`Plot_Density_Joint_Only`*Nebulosa Joint Density Plot*

---

## Description

Return only the joint density plot from Nebulosa `plot_density` function. Requires Nebulosa package from Bioconductor.

## Usage

```
Plot_Density_Joint_Only(  
  seurat_object,  
  features,  
  viridis_palette = "magma",  
  custom_palette = NULL,  
  pt.size = 1,  
  aspect_ratio = NULL,  
  reduction = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Features to plot.
<code>viridis_palette</code>	default viridis palette to use (must be one of: "viridis", "magma", "cividis", "inferno", "plasma"). Default is "magma".
<code>custom_palette</code>	non-default color palette to be used in place of default viridis options.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>aspect_ratio</code>	Control the aspect ratio (y:x axes ratio length). Must be numeric value; Default is NULL.
<code>reduction</code>	Dimensionality Reduction to use (if NULL then defaults to Object default).
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>plot_density</code> .

## Value

A ggplot object

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
library(Seurat)  
Plot_Density_Joint_Only(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = c("CD8A", "CD3E"))
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

Plot_Median_Genes	<i>Plot Median Genes per Cell per Sample</i>
-------------------	--

---

### Description

Plot of median genes per cell per sample grouped by desired meta data variable.

### Usage

```
Plot_Median_Genes(
  seurat_object,
  sample_col = "orig.ident",
  group.by = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  plot_title = "Median Genes/Cell per Sample",
  y_axis_label = "Median Genes",
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  legend_title = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  color_seed = 123
)
```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>sample_col</code>	Specify which column in meta.data specifies sample ID (i.e. orig.ident).
<code>group.by</code>	Column in meta.data slot to group results by (i.e. "Treatment").
<code>colors_use</code>	List of colors or color palette to use. Only applicable if <code>group.by</code> is not NULL.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>group.by</code> is not NULL. Default is 1.
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot title.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>legend_title</code>	Label for plot legend.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use</code> = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

### Value

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```

library(Seurat)
# Create example groups
pbmc_small$sample_id <- sample(c("sample1", "sample2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

# Plot
Plot_Median_Genes(seurat_object = pbmc_small, sample_col = "orig.ident", group.by = "sample_id")

```

---

Plot\_Median\_Mito

*Plot Median Percent Mito per Cell per Sample*


---

**Description**

Plot of median percent mito per cell per sample grouped by desired meta data variable.

**Usage**

```

Plot_Median_Mito(
  seurat_object,
  sample_col = "orig.ident",
  group.by = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  plot_title = "Median % Mito per Sample",
  y_axis_label = "Percent Mitochondrial Reads",
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  legend_title = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  color_seed = 123
)

```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
sample_col	Specify which column in meta.data specifies sample ID (i.e. orig.ident).
group.by	Column in meta.data slot to group results by (i.e. "Treatment").
colors_use	List of colors or color palette to use. Only applicable if group.by is not NULL.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if group.by is not NULL. Default is 1.
plot_title	Plot title.
y_axis_label	Label for y axis.
x_axis_label	Label for x axis.
legend_title	Label for plot legend.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# Add mito
obj <- Add_Mito_Ribo_Seurat(seurat_object = obj, species = "human")

# Plot
Plot_Median_Mito(seurat_object = obj, sample_col = "orig.ident", group.by = "sample_id")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Plot_Median_Other	<i>Plot Median other variable per Cell per Sample</i>
-------------------	---

---

**Description**

Plot of median other variable per cell per sample grouped by desired meta data variable.

**Usage**

```
Plot_Median_Other(  
  seurat_object,  
  median_var,  
  sample_col = "orig.ident",  
  group.by = NULL,  
  colors_use = NULL,  
  dot_size = 1,  
  plot_title = NULL,  
  y_axis_label = NULL,  
  x_axis_label = NULL,  
  legend_title = NULL,  
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,  
  color_seed = 123  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
median_var	Variable in meta.data slot to calculate and plot median values for.
sample_col	Specify which column in meta.data specifies sample ID (i.e. orig.ident).
group.by	Column in meta.data slot to group results by (i.e. "Treatment").
colors_use	List of colors or color palette to use. Only applicable if group.by is not NULL.

<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>group.by</code> is not NULL. Default is 1.
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot title.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>legend_title</code>	Label for plot legend.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use</code> = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
library(Seurat)
cd_features <- list(c('CD79B', 'CD79A', 'CD19', 'CD180', 'CD200', 'CD3D', 'CD2', 'CD3E',
'CD7', 'CD8A', 'CD14', 'CD1C', 'CD68', 'CD9', 'CD247'))

pbmc_small <- AddModuleScore(object = pbmc_small, features = cd_features, ctrl = 5,
name = 'CD_Features')

Plot_Median_Other(seurat_object = pbmc_small, median_var = "CD_Features1",
sample_col = "orig.ident", group.by = "Treatment")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Plot_Median_UMIs	<i>Plot Median UMIs per Cell per Sample</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

Plot of median UMIs per cell per sample grouped by desired meta data variable.

**Usage**

```
Plot_Median_UMIs(
  seurat_object,
  sample_col = "orig.ident",
  group.by = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  plot_title = "Median UMIs/Cell per Sample",
  y_axis_label = "Median UMIs",
  x_axis_label = NULL,
```

```

  legend_title = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  color_seed = 123
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>sample_col</code>	Specify which column in meta.data specifies sample ID (i.e. orig.ident).
<code>group.by</code>	Column in meta.data slot to group results by (i.e. "Treatment").
<code>colors_use</code>	List of colors or color palette to use. Only applicable if <code>group.by</code> is not NULL.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>group.by</code> is not NULL. Default is 1.
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot title.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>legend_title</code>	Label for plot legend.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use</code> = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

### Value

A ggplot object

### Examples

```

library(Seurat)
# Create example groups
pbmc_small$sample_id <- sample(c("sample1", "sample2"), size = ncol(pbmc_small), replace = TRUE)

# Plot
Plot_Median_UMIs(seurat_object = pbmc_small, sample_col = "orig.ident", group.by = "sample_id")

```

---

Proportion\_Plot

*Cell Proportion Plot*

---

### Description

Plots the proportion of cells belonging to each identity in `active.ident` of Seurat object. Can plot either the totals or split by a variable in `meta.data`.



**Usage**

```
Proportion_Plot(
  seurat_object,
  plot_type = "bar",
  plot_scale = "percent",
  group.by = "ident",
  split.by = NULL,
  num_columns = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  colors_use = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>plot_type</code>	whether to plot a pie chart or bar chart; value must be one of "bar" or "pie". Default is "bar"
<code>plot_scale</code>	whether to plot bar chart as total cell counts or percents, value must be one of "percent" or "count". Default is "percent".
<code>group.by</code>	meta data column to classify samples (default = "ident" and will use <code>active.ident</code> ).
<code>split.by</code>	meta data variable to use to split plots. Default is NULL which will plot across entire object.
<code>num_columns</code>	number of columns in plot. Only valid if <code>split.by</code> is not NULL.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is FALSE). Only valid if <code>plot_type</code> = "bar".
<code>colors_use</code>	color palette to use for plotting.
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use</code> = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use</code> = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

**Value**

ggplot2 or patchwork object

**Examples**

```
#' library(Seurat)
Proportion_Plot(seurat_object = pbmc_small)
```

---

 Proportion\_Plot\_per\_Sample

*Cell Proportion Plot per Sample*


---

### Description

Plots the proportion of cells belonging to each identity per sample split by grouping variable/condition.

### Usage

```
Proportion_Plot_per_Sample(
  seurat_object,
  cluster = "ident",
  split.by,
  sample_col,
  pt.size = 1.5,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  colors_use = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123
)
```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>cluster</code>	name of meta.data column containing cluster values. Default is <code>ident</code> which defaults to current active.ident.
<code>split.by</code>	name of meta.data column containing sample group/condition variable.
<code>sample_col</code>	name of meta.data column that contains sample ID information.
<code>pt.size</code>	the size of points in plot (default is 1.5).
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is FALSE). Only valid if <code>plot_type = "bar"</code> .
<code>colors_use</code>	color palette to use for plotting.
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

### Examples

```
## Not run:
Proportion_Plot_per_Sample(seurat_object = obj, split.by = "Diagnosis",
  sample_col = "orig.ident")

## End(Not run)
```

---

`Pull_Cluster_Annotation`*Pull cluster information from annotation csv file.*

---

### Description

shortcut filter and pull function compatible with annotation files created by `Create_Cluster_Annotation_File` by default but also any other csv file.

### Usage

```
Pull_Cluster_Annotation(  
  annotation = NULL,  
  cluster_name_col = "cluster",  
  cell_type_col = "cell_type"  
)
```

### Arguments

`annotation` name of the data.frame/tibble or path to CSV file containing cluster annotation.  
`cluster_name_col` name of column containing cluster names/numbers (default is "cluster").  
`cell_type_col` name of column contain the cell type annotation (default is "cell\_type").

### Value

a list of named vectors for every cell type in the `cell_type_col` column of the annotation table and vectors new cluster names (for use with `Rename_Clusters` function or manual identity renaming).

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
# If pulling from a data.frame/tibble  
cluster_annotation <- Pull_Cluster_Annotation(annotation = annotation_df,  
cluster_name_col = "cluster", cell_type_col = "cell_type")  
  
# If pulling from csv file  
cluster_annotation <- Pull_Cluster_Annotation(annotation = "file_path/file_name.csv",  
cluster_name_col = "cluster", cell_type_col = "cell_type")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Pull\_Directory\_List     *Pull Directory List*

---

**Description**

Enables easy listing of all sub-directories for use as input library lists in Read10X multi functions.

**Usage**

```
Pull_Directory_List(base_path)
```

**Arguments**

base\_path     path to the parent directory which contains all of the subdirectories of interest.

**Value**

A vector of sub-directories within base\_path.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
data_dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'  
library_list <- Pull_Directory_List(base_path = data_dir)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

QC\_Histogram     *QC Histogram Plots*

---

**Description**

Custom histogram for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Histogram(  
  seurat_object,  
  features,  
  low_cutoff = NULL,  
  high_cutoff = NULL,  
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,  
  split.by = NULL,  
  bins = 250,  
  colors_use = "dodgerblue",
```

```

    num_columns = NULL,
    plot_title = NULL,
    assay = NULL,
    print_defaults = FALSE
  )

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Feature from meta.data, assay features, or feature name shortcut to plot.
<code>low_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
<code>high_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
<code>split.by</code>	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
<code>bins</code>	number of bins to plot default is 250.
<code>colors_use</code>	color to fill histogram bars, default is "dodgerblue".
<code>num_columns</code>	Number of columns in plot layout.
<code>plot_title</code>	optional, vector to use for plot title. Default is the name of the variable being plotted.
<code>assay</code>	assay to pull features from, default is active assay.
<code>print_defaults</code>	return list of accepted default shortcuts to provide to features instead of full name.

### Value

A patchwork object

### Examples

```

## Not run:
QC_Histogram(seurat_object = object, features = "nFeature_RNA")

## End(Not run)

```

---

QC\_Plots\_Combined\_Vln *QC Plots Genes, UMIs, & % Mito*

---

### Description

Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_Combined_Vln(
  seurat_object,
  group.by = NULL,
  feature_cutoffs = NULL,
  UMI_cutoffs = NULL,
  mito_cutoffs = NULL,
  mito_name = "percent_mito",
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  plot_median = FALSE,
  median_size = 15,
  plot_boxplot = FALSE,
  colors_use = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  y_axis_log = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>feature_cutoffs</code>	Numeric vector of length 1 or 2 to plot lines for potential low/high threshold for filtering.
<code>UMI_cutoffs</code>	Numeric vector of length 1 or 2 to plot lines for potential low/high threshold for filtering.
<code>mito_cutoffs</code>	Numeric vector of length 1 or 2 to plot lines for potential low/high threshold for filtering.
<code>mito_name</code>	The column name containing percent mitochondrial counts information. Default value is "percent_mito" which is default value created when using <code>Add_Mito_Ribo()</code> .
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>pt.size</code>	Point size for plotting
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plot.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>TRUE</code> ).

<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is FALSE).
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">VlnPlot</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
QC_Plots_Combined_Vln(seurat_object = object)

## End(Not run)
```

---

`QC_Plots_Complexity`    *QC Plots Cell "Complexity"*

---

**Description**

Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_Complexity(
  seurat_object,
  feature = "log10GenesPerUMI",
  group.by = NULL,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "log10(Genes) / log10(UMIs)",
  plot_title = "Cell Complexity",
  low_cutoff = NULL,
  high_cutoff = NULL,
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  plot_median = FALSE,
  plot_boxplot = FALSE,
  median_size = 15,
  colors_use = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
```

```

    y_axis_log = FALSE,
    raster = NULL,
    ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
    color_seed = 123,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>feature</code>	Feature from Meta Data to plot.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot Title.
<code>low_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
<code>high_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>pt.size</code>	Point size for plotting
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plot.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>TRUE</code> ).
<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is <code>NULL</code> which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2</code> "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>VlnPlot</code> .

### Value

A `ggplot` object



**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
pbmc_small <- Add_Cell_Complexity(pbmc_small)

QC_Plots_Complexity(seurat_object = pbmc_small)
```

---

QC_Plots_Feature	<i>QC Plots Feature</i>
------------------	-------------------------

---

**Description**

Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_Feature(  
  seurat_object,  
  feature,  
  group.by = NULL,  
  x_axis_label = NULL,  
  y_axis_label = NULL,  
  plot_title = NULL,  
  low_cutoff = NULL,  
  high_cutoff = NULL,  
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,  
  pt.size = NULL,  
  plot_median = FALSE,  
  median_size = 15,  
  plot_boxplot = FALSE,  
  colors_use = NULL,  
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,  
  y_axis_log = FALSE,  
  raster = NULL,  
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,  
  color_seed = 123,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
feature	Feature from Meta Data to plot.
group.by	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, orig.ident); default is the current active.ident of the object.
x_axis_label	Label for x axis.

<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot Title.
<code>low_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
<code>high_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
<code>pt.size</code>	Point size for plotting.
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is FALSE).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is FALSE).
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plot.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is TRUE).
<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is FALSE).
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>VlnPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
QC_Plots_Feature(seurat_object = object, feature = "FEATURE_NAME",
y_axis_label = "FEATURE per Cell", plot_title = "FEATURE per Cell", high_cutoff = 10,
low_cutoff = 2)

## End(Not run)
```

---

QC_Plots_Genes	<i>QC Plots Genes</i>
----------------	-----------------------

---

**Description**

Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_Genes(
  seurat_object,
  plot_title = "Genes Per Cell/Nucleus",
  group.by = NULL,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "Features",
  low_cutoff = NULL,
  high_cutoff = NULL,
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  plot_median = FALSE,
  plot_boxplot = FALSE,
  median_size = 15,
  colors_use = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  y_axis_log = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  assay = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
plot_title	Plot Title.
group.by	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, orig.ident); default is the current active.ident of the object.
x_axis_label	Label for x axis.
y_axis_label	Label for y axis.
low_cutoff	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
high_cutoff	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
cutoff_line_width	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
pt.size	Point size for plotting.

plot_median	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is FALSE).
plot_boxplot	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is FALSE).
median_size	Shape size for the median is plotted.
colors_use	vector of colors to use for plot.
x_lab_rotate	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is TRUE).
y_axis_log	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is FALSE).
raster	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
assay	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If colors_use = NULL, Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">VlnPlot</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
QC_Plots_Genes(seurat_object = pbmc_small, plot_title = "Genes per Cell", low_cutoff = 40,
high_cutoff = 85)
```

---

QC\_Plots\_Mito

*QC Plots Mito*

---

**Description**

#' Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_Mito(
  seurat_object,
  mito_name = "percent_mito",
  plot_title = "Mito Gene % per Cell/Nucleus",
  group.by = NULL,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "% Mitochondrial Gene Counts",
  low_cutoff = NULL,
  high_cutoff = NULL,
```

```

    cutoff_line_width = NULL,
    pt.size = NULL,
    plot_median = FALSE,
    median_size = 15,
    plot_boxplot = FALSE,
    colors_use = NULL,
    x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
    y_axis_log = FALSE,
    raster = NULL,
    ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
    color_seed = 123,
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>mito_name</code>	The column name containing percent mitochondrial counts information. Default value is "percent_mito" which is default value created when using <code>Add_Mito_Ribo()</code> .
<code>plot_title</code>	Plot Title.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>low_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
<code>high_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>pt.size</code>	Point size for plotting.
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plot.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>TRUE</code> ).
<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is <code>NULL</code> which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>VlnPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
QC_Plots_Mito(seurat_object = object, plot_title = "Percent Mito per Cell", high_cutoff = 10)

## End(Not run)
```

---

QC\_Plots\_UMIs

*QC Plots UMIs*

---

**Description**

#' Custom VlnPlot for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plots_UMIs(
  seurat_object,
  plot_title = "UMIs per Cell/Nucleus",
  group.by = NULL,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "UMIs",
  low_cutoff = NULL,
  high_cutoff = NULL,
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  plot_median = FALSE,
  median_size = 15,
  plot_boxplot = FALSE,
  colors_use = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = TRUE,
  y_axis_log = FALSE,
  raster = NULL,
  assay = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat\_object    Seurat object name.  
plot\_title       Plot Title.

<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>low_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering.
<code>high_cutoff</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is <code>NULL</code> .
<code>pt.size</code>	Point size for plotting.
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plot.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	Rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is <code>TRUE</code> ).
<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is <code>FALSE</code> ).
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is <code>NULL</code> which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>assay</code>	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>VlnPlot</code> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
QC_Plots_UMIs(seurat_object = pbmc_small, plot_title = "UMIs per Cell", low_cutoff = 75,
high_cutoff = 600)
```

---

QC\_Plot\_GenevsFeature *QC Plots Genes vs Misc*

---

## Description

Custom FeatureScatter for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

## Usage

```
QC_Plot_GenevsFeature(
  seurat_object,
  feature1,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "Genes per Cell/Nucleus",
  low_cutoff_gene = NULL,
  high_cutoff_gene = NULL,
  low_cutoff_feature = NULL,
  high_cutoff_feature = NULL,
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  pt.size = 1,
  group.by = NULL,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
  assay = NULL,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  shuffle_seed = 1,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>feature1</code>	First feature to plot.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>low_cutoff_gene</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering genes per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_gene</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering genes per cell.
<code>low_cutoff_feature</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering feature1 per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_feature</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering feature1 per cell.



<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plotting by identity.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ). Default is <code>@active.ident</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
<code>assay</code>	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2</code> "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>shuffle_seed</code>	Sets the seed if randomly shuffling the order of points (Default is 1).
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">FeatureScatter</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
QC_Plot_GenevsFeature(seurat_object = obj, y_axis_label = "Feature per Cell")

## End(Not run)
```

---

QC\_Plot\_UMIvsFeature    *QC Plots UMI vs Misc*

---

**Description**

Custom `FeatureScatter` for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plot_UMIvsFeature(
  seurat_object,
  feature1,
  x_axis_label = NULL,
  y_axis_label = "UMIs per Cell/Nucleus",
```

```

low_cutoff_UMI = NULL,
high_cutoff_UMI = NULL,
low_cutoff_feature = NULL,
high_cutoff_feature = NULL,
cutoff_line_width = NULL,
colors_use = NULL,
pt.size = 1,
group.by = NULL,
raster = NULL,
raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
assay = NULL,
ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
color_seed = 123,
shuffle_seed = 1,
...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>feature1</code>	First feature to plot.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>low_cutoff_UMI</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering UMI per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_UMI</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering UMI per cell.
<code>low_cutoff_feature</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering feature1 per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_feature</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering feature1 per cell.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plotting by identity.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ). Default is <code>@active.ident</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 cells.
<code>raster.dpi</code>	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
<code>assay</code>	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2</code> "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.

color\_seed random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors\_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

shuffle\_seed Sets the seed if randomly shuffling the order of points (Default is 1).

... Extra parameters passed to [FeatureScatter](#).

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
QC_Plot_UMIvsFeature(seurat_object = obj, y_axis_label = "Feature per Cell")

## End(Not run)
```

---

QC\_Plot\_UMIvsGene      *QC Plots Genes vs UMIs*

---

**Description**

Custom FeatureScatter for initial QC checks including lines for thresholding

**Usage**

```
QC_Plot_UMIvsGene(
  seurat_object,
  x_axis_label = "UMIs per Cell/Nucleus",
  y_axis_label = "Genes per Cell/Nucleus",
  low_cutoff_gene = -Inf,
  high_cutoff_gene = Inf,
  low_cutoff_UMI = -Inf,
  high_cutoff_UMI = Inf,
  cutoff_line_width = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  meta_gradient_name = NULL,
  meta_gradient_color = viridis_plasma_dark_high,
  meta_gradient_na_color = "lightgray",
  meta_gradient_low_cutoff = NULL,
  cells = NULL,
  combination = FALSE,
  ident_legend = TRUE,
  pt.size = 1,
  group.by = NULL,
  raster = NULL,
  raster.dpi = c(512, 512),
```

```

    assay = NULL,
    ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
    color_seed = 123,
    shuffle_seed = 1,
    ...
)

```

## Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>x_axis_label</code>	Label for x axis.
<code>y_axis_label</code>	Label for y axis.
<code>low_cutoff_gene</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering genes per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_gene</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering genes per cell.
<code>low_cutoff_UMI</code>	Plot line a potential low threshold for filtering UMIs per cell.
<code>high_cutoff_UMI</code>	Plot line a potential high threshold for filtering UMIs per cell.
<code>cutoff_line_width</code>	numerical value for thickness of cutoff lines, default is NULL.
<code>colors_use</code>	vector of colors to use for plotting by identity.
<code>meta_gradient_name</code>	Name of continuous meta data variable to color points in plot by. (MUST be continuous variable i.e. "percent_mito").
<code>meta_gradient_color</code>	The gradient color palette to use for plotting of meta variable (default is viridis "Plasma" palette with dark colors high).
<code>meta_gradient_na_color</code>	Color to use for plotting values when a <code>meta_gradient_low_cutoff</code> is set (default is "lightgray").
<code>meta_gradient_low_cutoff</code>	Value to use as threshold for plotting. <code>meta_gradient_name</code> values below this value will be plotted using <code>meta_gradient_na_color</code> .
<code>cells</code>	Cells to include on the scatter plot (default is all cells).
<code>combination</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether or not to return a plot layout with both the plot colored by identity and the meta data gradient plot.
<code>ident_legend</code>	logical, whether to plot the legend containing identities (left plot) when <code>combination = TRUE</code> . Default is TRUE.
<code>pt.size</code>	Passes size of points to both <code>FeatureScatter</code> and <code>geom_point</code> .
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ). Default is <code>@active.ident</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 100,000 cells.

raster.dpi	Pixel resolution for rasterized plots, passed to <code>geom_scattermore()</code> . Default is <code>c(512, 512)</code> .
assay	Name of assay to use, defaults to the active assay.
ggplot_default_colors	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2</code> "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
color_seed	Random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
shuffle_seed	Sets the seed if randomly shuffling the order of points (Default is 1).
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">FeatureScatter</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
QC_Plot_UMIvsGene(seurat_object = pbmc_small, x_axis_label = "UMIs per Cell/Nucleus",
y_axis_label = "Genes per Cell/Nucleus")
```

---

Random\_Cells\_Downsample

*Randomly downsample by identity*

---

**Description**

Get a randomly downsampled set of cell barcodes with even numbers of cells for each identity class. Can return either as a list (1 entry per identity class) or vector of barcodes.

**Usage**

```
Random_Cells_Downsample(
  seurat_object,
  num_cells,
  group.by = NULL,
  return_list = FALSE,
  allow_lower = FALSE,
  entire_object = FALSE,
  seed = 123
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object
num_cells	number of cells per ident to use in down-sampling. This value must be less than or equal to the size of ident with fewest cells. Alternatively, can set to "min" which will use the maximum number of barcodes based on size of smallest group.
group.by	The ident to use to group cells. Default is NULL which use current active.ident.
return_list	logical, whether or not to return the results as list instead of vector, default is FALSE.
allow_lower	logical, if number of cells in identity is lower than num_cells keep the maximum number of cells, default is FALSE. If FALSE will report error message if num_cells is too high, if TRUE will subset cells with more than num_cells to that value and those with less than num_cells will not be downsampled.
entire_object	logical, whether to downsample to specific number of cells across whole object, instead of number of cells per identity, default is FALSE.
seed	random seed to use for downsampling. Default is 123.

**Value**

either a vector or list of cell barcodes

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)

# return vector of barcodes
random_cells <- Random_Cells_Downsampling(seurat_object = pbmc_small, num_cells = 10)
head(random_cells)

# return list
random_cells_list <- Random_Cells_Downsampling(seurat_object = pbmc_small, return_list = TRUE,
num_cells = 10)
head(random_cells_list)

# return max total number of cells (setting `num_cells = "min"`)
random_cells_max <- Random_Cells_Downsampling(seurat_object = pbmc_small, num_cells = "min")
```

---

Read10X\_GEO

*Load in NCBI GEO data from 10X*


---

**Description**

Enables easy loading of sparse data matrices provided by 10X genomics. That have file prefixes added to them by NCBI GEO or other repos.

**Usage**

```

Read10X_GEO(
  data_dir = NULL,
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  gene.column = 2,
  cell.column = 1,
  unique.features = TRUE,
  strip.suffix = FALSE,
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>data_dir</code>	Directory containing the matrix.mtx, genes.tsv (or features.tsv), and barcodes.tsv files provided by 10X.
<code>sample_list</code>	A vector of file prefixes/names if specific samples are desired. Default is NULL and will load all samples in given directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the file name of each sample.
<code>gene.column</code>	Specify which column of genes.tsv or features.tsv to use for gene names; default is 2.
<code>cell.column</code>	Specify which column of barcodes.tsv to use for cell names; default is 1.
<code>unique.features</code>	Make feature names unique (default TRUE).
<code>strip.suffix</code>	Remove trailing "-1" if present in all cell barcodes.
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether to use multiple cores when reading in data. Only possible on Linux based systems.
<code>num_cores</code>	if <code>parallel = TRUE</code> indicates the number of cores to use for multi-core processing.
<code>merge</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from <code>sample_names</code> .

**Value**

If features.csv indicates the data has multiple data types, a list containing a sparse matrix of the data from each type will be returned. Otherwise a sparse matrix containing the expression data will be returned.

**References**

Code used in function has been slightly modified from `Seurat::Read10X` function of Seurat package <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat> (License: GPL-3). Function was modified to sup-

port file prefixes and altered loop by Samuel Marsh for scCustomize (also previously posted as potential PR to Seurat GitHub).

### Examples

```
## Not run:
data_dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'
expression_matrices <- Read10X_GEO(data_dir = data_dir)
# To create object from single file
seurat_object = CreateSeuratObject(counts = expression_matrices[[1]])

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read10X\_h5\_GEO

*Load in NCBI GEO data from 10X in HDF5 file format*

---

### Description

Enables easy loading of HDF5 data matrices provided by 10X genomics. That have file prefixes added to them by NCBI GEO or other repos or programs (i.e. Cell Bender)

### Usage

```
Read10X_h5_GEO(
  data_dir = NULL,
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  shared_suffix = NULL,
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>data_dir</code>	Directory containing the .h5 files provided by 10X.
<code>sample_list</code>	A vector of file prefixes/names if specific samples are desired. Default is NULL and will load all samples in given directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the file name of each sample.
<code>shared_suffix</code>	a suffix and file extension shared by all samples.
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether to use multiple cores when reading in data. Only possible on Linux based systems.
<code>num_cores</code>	if <code>parallel = TRUE</code> indicates the number of cores to use for multicore processing.



```
merge      logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or
           return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode
           prefix added. The prefix will be taken from sample_names.
...        Additional arguments passed to Read10X\_h5
```

**Value**

If the data has multiple data types, a list containing a sparse matrix of the data from each type will be returned. Otherwise a sparse matrix containing the expression data will be returned.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
data_dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'
expression_matrices <- Read10X_h5_GEO(data_dir = data_dir)
# To create object from single file
seurat_object = CreateSeuratObject(counts = expression_matrices[[1]])

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read10X\_h5\_Multi\_Directory

*Load 10X h5 count matrices from multiple directories*

---

**Description**

Enables easy loading of sparse data matrices provided by 10X genomics that are present in multiple subdirectories. Can function with either default output directory structure of Cell Ranger or custom directory structure.

**Usage**

```
Read10X_h5_Multi_Directory(
  base_path,
  secondary_path = NULL,
  default_10X_path = TRUE,
  cellranger_multi = FALSE,
  h5_filename = "filtered_feature_bc_matrix.h5",
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  replace_suffix = FALSE,
  new_suffix_list = NULL,
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>base_path</code>	path to the parent directory which contains all of the subdirectories of interest.
<code>secondary_path</code>	path from the parent directory to count matrix files for each sample.
<code>default_10X_path</code>	logical (default TRUE) sets the secondary path variable to the default 10X directory structure.
<code>cellranger_multi</code>	logical, whether samples were processed with Cell Ranger multi, default is FALSE.
<code>h5_filename</code>	name of h5 file (including .h5 suffix). If all h5 files have same name (i.e. Cell Ranger output) then use full file name. By default function uses Cell Ranger name: "filtered_feature_bc_matrix.h5". If h5 files have sample specific prefixes (i.e. from Cell Bender) then use only the shared part of file name (e.g., "_filtered_out.h5").
<code>sample_list</code>	a vector of sample directory names if only specific samples are desired. If NULL will read in subdirectories in parent directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the subdirectory name of each sample.
<code>replace_suffix</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether or not to replace the barcode suffixes of matrices using <a href="#">Replace_Suffix</a> .
<code>new_suffix_list</code>	a vector of new suffixes to replace existing suffixes if <code>replace_suffix = TRUE</code> . See <a href="#">Replace_Suffix</a> for more information. To remove all suffixes set <code>new_suffix_list = ""</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to use multi core processing to read in matrices.
<code>num_cores</code>	how many cores to use for parallel processing.
<code>merge</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from <code>sample_names</code> .
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">Read10X_h5</a> .

**Value**

a list of sparse matrices (`merge = FALSE`) or a single sparse matrix (`merge = TRUE`).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
base_path <- 'path/to/data/directory'
expression_matrices <- Read10X_h5_Multi_Directory(base_path = base_path)

## End(Not run)
```

---

 Read10X\_Multi\_Directory

*Load 10X count matrices from multiple directories*


---

### Description

Enables easy loading of sparse data matrices provided by 10X genomics that are present in multiple subdirectories. Can function with either default output directory structure of Cell Ranger or custom directory structure.

### Usage

```
Read10X_Multi_Directory(
  base_path,
  secondary_path = NULL,
  default_10X_path = TRUE,
  cellranger_multi = FALSE,
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>base_path</code>	path to the parent directory which contains all of the subdirectories of interest.
<code>secondary_path</code>	path from the parent directory to count matrix files for each sample.
<code>default_10X_path</code>	logical (default TRUE) sets the secondary path variable to the default 10X directory structure.
<code>cellranger_multi</code>	logical, whether samples were processed with Cell Ranger multi, default is FALSE.
<code>sample_list</code>	a vector of sample directory names if only specific samples are desired. If NULL will read in subdirectories in parent directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the subdirectory name of each sample.
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to use multi core processing to read in matrices.
<code>num_cores</code>	how many cores to use for parallel processing.
<code>merge</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from <code>sample_names</code> .
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">Read10X</a> .

**Value**

a list of sparse matrices (merge = FALSE) or a single sparse matrix (merge = TRUE).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
base_path <- 'path/to/data/directory'
expression_matrices <- Read10X_Multi_Directory(base_path = base_path)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read\_Add\_cNMF

*Read and add results from cNMF*


---

**Description**

Reads the usage and spectra files from cNMF results and adds them as dimensionality reduction to seurat object.

**Usage**

```
Read_Add_cNMF(
  seurat_object,
  usage_file,
  spectra_file,
  reduction_name = "cnmf",
  reduction_key = "cNMF_",
  normalize = TRUE,
  assay = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object name to add cNMF reduction
usage_file	path and name of cNMF usage file
spectra_file	path and name of cNMF spectra file
reduction_name	name to use for reduction to be added, default is "cnmf".
reduction_key	key to use for reduction to be added, default is "cNMF_".
normalize	logical, whether to normalize the cNMF usage data, default is TRUE
assay	assay to add reduction. Default is NULL and will use current active assay.
overwrite	logical, whether to overwrite a reduction with the name reduction_name already present in reduction slot of given Seurat object.

**Value**

Seurat object with new dimensionality reduction "cnmf"

**References**

For more information about cNMF and usage see <https://github.com/dylkot/cNMF>

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
object <- Read_cNMF(seurat_object = object,
usage_file = "example_cNMF/example_cNMF.usages.k_27.dt_0_01.consensus.txt",
spectra_file = "example_cNMF/example_cNMF.gene_spectra_score.k_27.dt_0_01.txt")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Mat

*Load CellBender h5 matrices (corrected)*

---

**Description**

Extract sparse matrix with corrected counts from CellBender h5 output file.

**Usage**

```
Read_CellBender_h5_Mat(
  file_name,
  use.names = TRUE,
  unique.features = TRUE,
  h5_group_name = NULL,
  feature_slot_name = "features"
)
```

**Arguments**

file_name	Path to h5 file.
use.names	Label row names with feature names rather than ID numbers (default TRUE).
unique.features	Make feature names unique (default TRUE).
h5_group_name	Name of the group within H5 file that contains count data. This is only required if H5 file contains multiple subgroups and non-default names. Default is NULL.
feature_slot_name	Name of the slot contain feature names/ids. Must be one of: "features"(Cell Ranger v3+) or "genes" (Cell Ranger v1/v2 or STARsolo). Default is "features".

**Value**

sparse matrix

**References**

Code used in function has been modified from `Seurat::Read10X_h5` function of Seurat package <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat> (License: GPL-3).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
mat <- Read_CellBender_h5_Mat(file_name = "/SampleA_out_filtered.h5")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Multi\_Directory

*Load CellBender h5 matrices (corrected) from multiple directories*

---

**Description**

Extract sparse matrix with corrected counts from CellBender h5 output file across multiple sample subdirectories.

**Usage**

```
Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_Directory(
  base_path,
  secondary_path = NULL,
  filtered_h5 = TRUE,
  custom_name = NULL,
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  no_file_prefix = FALSE,
  h5_group_name = NULL,
  feature_slot_name = "features",
  replace_suffix = FALSE,
  new_suffix_list = NULL,
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>base_path</code>	path to the parent directory which contains all of the subdirectories of interest.
<code>secondary_path</code>	path from the parent directory to count matrix files for each sample.
<code>filtered_h5</code>	logical (default TRUE). Will set the shared file name suffix <code>custom_name</code> is NULL.
<code>custom_name</code>	if file name was customized in CellBender then this parameter should contain the portion of file name that is shared across all samples. Must include the ".h5" extension as well.
<code>sample_list</code>	a vector of sample directory names if only specific samples are desired. If NULL will read in subdirectories in parent directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the subdirectory name of each sample. NOTE: unless <code>sample_list</code> is specified this will rename files in the order they are read which will be alphabetical.
<code>no_file_prefix</code>	logical, whether or not the file has prefix identical to folder name. Default is TRUE.
<code>h5_group_name</code>	Name of the group within H5 file that contains count data. This is only required if H5 file contains multiple subgroups and non-default names. Default is NULL.
<code>feature_slot_name</code>	Name of the slot contain feature names/ids. Must be one of: "features"(Cell Ranger v3+) or "genes" (Cell Ranger v1/v2 or STARsolo). Default is "features".
<code>replace_suffix</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether or not to replace the barcode suffixes of matrices using <a href="#">Replace_Suffix</a> .
<code>new_suffix_list</code>	a vector of new suffixes to replace existing suffixes if <code>replace_suffix = TRUE</code> . See <a href="#">Replace_Suffix</a> for more information. To remove all suffixes set <code>new_suffix_list = ""</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to use multi core processing to read in matrices.
<code>num_cores</code>	how many cores to use for parallel processing.
<code>merge</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from <code>sample_names</code> .
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">Read_CellBender_h5_Mat</a> .

**Value**

list of sparse matrices

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
base_path <- 'path/to/data/directory'
mat_list <- Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_Directory(base_path = base_path)
```

```
## End(Not run)
```

---

```
Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_File
```

*Load CellBender h5 matrices (corrected) from multiple files*

---

### Description

Extract sparse matrix with corrected counts from CellBender h5 output file across multiple samples within the same directory.

### Usage

```
Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_File(
  data_dir = NULL,
  filtered_h5 = TRUE,
  custom_name = NULL,
  sample_list = NULL,
  sample_names = NULL,
  h5_group_name = NULL,
  feature_slot_name = "features",
  parallel = FALSE,
  num_cores = NULL,
  merge = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>data_dir</code>	Directory containing the .h5 files output by CellBender.
<code>filtered_h5</code>	logical (default TRUE). Will set the shared file name suffix if <code>custom_name</code> is NULL.
<code>custom_name</code>	if file name was customized in CellBender then this parameter should contain the portion of file name that is shared across all samples. Must include the ".h5" extension as well.
<code>sample_list</code>	a vector of sample names if only specific samples are desired. If NULL will read in all files within <code>data_dir</code> directory.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the subdirectory name of each sample.
<code>h5_group_name</code>	Name of the group within H5 file that contains count data. This is only required if H5 file contains multiple subgroups and non-default names. Default is NULL.
<code>feature_slot_name</code>	Name of the slot contain feature names/ids. Must be one of: "features"(Cell Ranger v3+) or "genes" (Cell Ranger v1/v2 or STARsolo). Default is "features".



parallel	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to use multi core processing to read in matrices
num_cores	how many cores to use for parallel processing.
merge	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from sample_names.
...	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">Read_CellBender_h5_Mat</a> .

### Value

list of sparse matrices

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
base_path <- 'path/to/data/directory'  
mat_list <- Read_CellBender_h5_Multi_File(data_dir = base_path)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Read_GEO_Delim	<i>Load in NCBI GEO data formatted as single file per sample</i>
----------------	--

---

### Description

Can read delimited file types (i.e. csv, tsv, txt)

### Usage

```
Read_GEO_Delim(  
  data_dir,  
  file_suffix,  
  move_genes_rownames = TRUE,  
  sample_list = NULL,  
  full_names = FALSE,  
  sample_names = NULL,  
  barcode_suffix_period = FALSE,  
  parallel = FALSE,  
  num_cores = NULL,  
  merge = FALSE  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>data_dir</code>	Directory containing the files.
<code>file_suffix</code>	The file suffix of the individual files. Must be the same across all files being imported. This is used to detect files to import and their GEO IDs.
<code>move_genes_rownames</code>	logical. Whether gene IDs are present in first column or in row names of delimited file. If TRUE will move the first column to row names before creating final matrix. Default is TRUE.
<code>sample_list</code>	a vector of samples within directory to read in (can be either with or without <code>file_suffix</code> see <code>full_names</code> ). If NULL will read in all subdirectories.
<code>full_names</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether or not the <code>sample_list</code> vector includes the file suffix. If FALSE the function will add suffix based on <code>file_suffix</code> parameter.
<code>sample_names</code>	a set of sample names to use for each sample entry in returned list. If NULL will set names to the directory name of each sample.
<code>barcode_suffix_period</code>	Is the barcode suffix a period and should it be changed to "-". Default (FALSE; barcodes will be left identical to their format in input files.). If TRUE "." in barcode suffix will be changed to "-".
<code>parallel</code>	logical (default FALSE). Whether to use multiple cores when reading in data. Only possible on Linux based systems.
<code>num_cores</code>	if <code>parallel = TRUE</code> indicates the number of cores to use for multicore processing.
<code>merge</code>	logical (default FALSE) whether or not to merge samples into a single matrix or return list of matrices. If TRUE each sample entry in list will have cell barcode prefix added. The prefix will be taken from <code>sample_names</code> .

**Value**

List of gene x cell matrices in list format named by sample name.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
data_dir <- 'path/to/data/directory'
expression_matrices <- Read_GEO_Delim(data_dir = data_dir)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Read\_Metrics\_10X      *Read Overall Statistics from 10X Cell Ranger Count*

---

### Description

Get data.frame with all metrics from the Cell Ranger count analysis (present in web\_summary.html)

### Usage

```
Read_Metrics_10X(  
  base_path,  
  secondary_path = NULL,  
  default_10X = TRUE,  
  cellranger_multi = FALSE,  
  lib_list = NULL,  
  lib_names = NULL  
)
```

### Arguments

base_path	path to the parent directory which contains all of the sub-directories of interest or alternatively can provide single csv file to read and format identically to reading multiple files.
secondary_path	path from the parent directory to count "outs/" folder which contains the "metrics_summary.csv" file.
default_10X	logical (default TRUE) sets the secondary path variable to the default 10X directory structure.
cellranger_multi	logical, whether or not metrics come from Cell Ranger count or from Cell Ranger multi. Default is FALSE.
lib_list	a list of sample names (matching directory names) to import. If NULL will read in all samples in parent directory.
lib_names	a set of sample names to use for each sample. If NULL will set names to the directory name of each sample.

### Value

A data frame or list of data.frames with sample metrics from cell ranger.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
metrics <- Read_Metrics_10X(base_path = "/path/to/directories", default_10X = TRUE)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

Read\_Metrics\_CellBender

*Read Overall Statistics from CellBender*

---

### Description

Get data.frame with all metrics from the CellBender remove-background analysis.

### Usage

```
Read_Metrics_CellBender(base_path, lib_list = NULL, lib_names = NULL)
```

### Arguments

base_path	path to the parent directory which contains all of the sub-directories of interest or path to single metrics csv file.
lib_list	a list of sample names (matching directory names) to import. If NULL will read in all samples in parent directory.
lib_names	a set of sample names to use for each sample. If NULL will set names to the directory name of each sample.

### Value

A data frame with sample metrics from CellBender.

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
CB_metrics <- Read_Metrics_CellBender(base_path = "/path/to/directories")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Reduction>Loading\_Present

*Check if reduction loadings are present*

---

### Description

Check if reduction loadings are present in object and return vector of found loading names. Return warning messages for reductions not found.

**Usage**

```
Reduction>Loading_Present(  
  seurat_object,  
  reduction_names,  
  print_msg = TRUE,  
  omit_warn = TRUE,  
  return_none = FALSE  
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	object name.
reduction_names	vector of reduction loading names to check.
print_msg	logical. Whether message should be printed if all features are found. Default is TRUE.
omit_warn	logical. Whether to print message about reduction loadings that are not found in current object. Default is TRUE.
return_none	logical. Whether list of found vs. bad reduction loadings should still be returned if no reductions are found. Default is FALSE.

**Value**

A list of length 3 containing 1) found reduction loadings, 2) not found reduction loadings

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
reductions <- Reduction>Loading_Present(seurat_object = obj_name, reduction_name = "PC_1")  
found_reductions <- reductions[[1]]  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

ReFilter\_SeuratObject *Re-filter Seurat object*

---

**Description**

Allows for re-filtering of Seurat object based on new parameters for min.cells and min.features (see [CreateSeuratObject](#) for more details)

**Usage**

```
ReFilter_SeuratObject(
  seurat_object,
  min.cells = NULL,
  min.features = NULL,
  override = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

seurat_object	Seurat object to filter
min.cells	Include features detected in at least this many cells. Will recalculate nCount and nFeature meta.data values as well.
min.features	Include cells where at least this many features are detected.
override	logical, override the Yes/No interactive check (see details). Default is FALSE; don't override.
verbose	logical, whether to print information on filtering parameters and number of cells/features removed, Default is TRUE.

**Details**

When running this function any existing reductions, graphs, and all layers except "counts" in the RNA assay. None of these aspects will be valid once cells/features are removed. To ensure users understand this default behavior of function will provide interactive prompt that users must select "Yes" in order to continue. To avoid this behavior users can set `override = TRUE` and function will skip the interactive prompt.

**Value**

Seurat object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# Remove features expressed in fewer than 10 cells
obj_fil <- ReFilter_SeuratObject(seurat_object = obj, min.cells = 10)

# Remove cells with fewer than 1000 features
obj_fil <- ReFilter_SeuratObject(seurat_object = obj, min.features = 1000)

# Filter on both parameters
obj_fil <- ReFilter_SeuratObject(seurat_object = obj, min.features = 1000, min.cells = 10)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Rename_Clusters	<i>Rename Clusters</i>
-----------------	------------------------

---

### Description

Wrapper function to rename active cluster identity in Seurat or Liger Object with new idents.

### Usage

```
Rename_Clusters(object, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
Rename_Clusters(
  object,
  new_idents,
  old_ident_name = NULL,
  new_ident_name = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  ...
)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Rename_Clusters(
  object,
  new_idents,
  old_ident_name = NULL,
  new_ident_name = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>object</code>	Object of class Seurat or liger.
<code>...</code>	Arguments passed to other methods
<code>new_idents</code>	vector of new cluster names. Must be equal to the length of current default identity of Object. Will accept named vector (with old idents as names) or will name the <code>new_idents</code> vector internally.
<code>old_ident_name</code>	optional, name to use for storing current object idents in object meta data slot.
<code>new_ident_name</code>	optional, name to use for storing new object idents in object meta data slot.
<code>overwrite</code>	logical, whether to overwrite columns in object meta data slot. if they have same names as <code>old_ident_name</code> and/or <code>new_ident_name</code> .

### Value

An object of the same class as `object` with updated default identities.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
# Liger version
obj <- Rename_Clusters(object = obj_name, new_idents = new_idents_vec,
old_ident_name = "LIGER_Idents_Round01", new_ident_name = "LIGER_Idents_Round02")

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
obj <- Rename_Clusters(seurat_object = obj_name, new_idents = new_idents_vec,
old_ident_name = "Seurat_Idents_Round01", new_ident_name = "Round01_Res0.6_Idents")

## End(Not run)
```

---

Replace_Suffix	<i>Replace barcode suffixes</i>
----------------	---------------------------------

---

**Description**

Replace barcode suffixes in matrix, data.frame, or list of matrices/data.frames

**Usage**

```
Replace_Suffix(data, current_suffix, new_suffix)
```

**Arguments**

data	Either matrix/data.frame or list of matrices/data.frames with the cell barcodes in the column names.
current_suffix	a single value or vector of values representing current barcode suffix. If suffix is the same for all matrices/data.frames in list only single value is required.
new_suffix	a single value or vector of values representing new barcode suffix to be added. If desired suffix is the same for all matrices/data.frames in list only single value is required. If no suffix is desired set new_suffix = "".

**Value**

matrix or data.frame with new column names.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
dge_matrix <- Replace_Suffix(data = dge_matrix, current_suffix = "-1", new_suffix = "-2")

## End(Not run)
```



---

scCustomize\_Palette    *Color Palette Selection for scCustomize*

---

## Description

Function to return package default discrete palettes depending on number of groups plotted.

## Usage

```
scCustomize_Palette(  
  num_groups,  
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,  
  color_seed = 123  
)
```

## Arguments

num_groups	number of groups to be plotted. If ggplot_default_colors = FALSE then by default: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If number of levels plotted equal to 2 then colors will be NavyAndOrange().</li><li>• If number of levels plotted greater than 2 but less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" from DiscretePalette_scCustomize().</li><li>• If greater than 36 will use "varibow" with shuffle = TRUE from DiscretePalette_scCustomize.</li></ul>
ggplot_default_colors	logical. Whether to use default ggplot hue palette or not.
color_seed	random seed to use for shuffling the "varibow" palette.

## Value

vector of colors to use for plotting.

## Examples

```
cols <- scCustomize_Palette(num_groups = 24, ggplot_default_colors = FALSE)  
PalettePlot(pal= cols)
```

---

 Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Alignment\_Combined

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment) (Layout)*


---

### Description

Plot a combined plot of the Alignment QC metrics from sequencing output.

### Usage

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Alignment_Combined(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  patchwork_title = "Sequencing QC Plots: Read Alignment Metrics",
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>patchwork_title</code>	Title to use for the patchworked plot output.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

### Value

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Alignment_Combined(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Antisense *QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads mapped Antisense to Gene

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Antisense(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

metrics_dataframe	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
plot_by	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
colors_use	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if plot_by is not sample_id Default is 1.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
significance	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
...	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Antisense(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Basic\_Combined

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Layout)*

---

**Description**

Plot a combined plot of the basic QC metrics from sequencing output.

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Basic_Combined(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  patchwork_title = "Sequencing QC Plots: Basic Cell Metrics",
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>patchwork_title</code>	Title to use for the patchworked plot output.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Basic_Combined(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Exonic      *QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads confidently mapped to Exonic regions

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Exonic(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Exonic(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genes      *QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the median genes per cell per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Genes(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Genes(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genome      *QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads confidently mapped to genome

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Genome(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Genome(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intergenic

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads confidently mapped to intergenic regions

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Intergenic(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.



**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Intergenic(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intronic *QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads confidently mapped to intronic regions

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Intronic(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Intronic(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Number\_Cells

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the number of cells per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Number_Cells(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

metrics_dataframe	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
plot_by	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
colors_use	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if plot_by is not sample_id Default is 1.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
significance	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
...	Other variables to pass to ggpubr::stat_compare_means when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Number_Cells(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_in\_Cells

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads in cells per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Reads_in_Cells(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Reads_in_Cells(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_per\_Cell

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the mean number of reads per cell

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Reads_per_Cell(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

metrics_dataframe	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
plot_by	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
colors_use	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if plot_by is not sample_id Default is 1.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
significance	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
...	Other variables to pass to ggpubr:::stat_compare_means when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Reads_per_Cell(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Saturation

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the sequencing saturation percentage per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Saturation(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Saturation(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Total\_Genes

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics*

---

**Description**

Plot the total genes detected per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Total_Genes(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Total_Genes(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Transcriptome

*QC Plots Sequencing metrics (Alignment)*

---

**Description**

Plot the fraction of reads confidently mapped to transcriptome

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_Transcriptome(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>metrics_dataframe</code>	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
<code>plot_by</code>	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
<code>dot_size</code>	size of the dots plotted if <code>plot_by</code> is not <code>sample_id</code> Default is 1.
<code>x_lab_rotate</code>	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
<code>significance</code>	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
<code>...</code>	Other variables to pass to <code>ggpubr::stat_compare_means</code> when doing significance testing.

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
Seq_QC_Plot_Transcriptome(metrics_dataframe = metrics)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seq_QC_Plot_UMIs	<i>QC Plots Sequencing metrics</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

---

**Description**

Plot the median UMIs per cell per sample

**Usage**

```
Seq_QC_Plot_UMIs(
  metrics_dataframe,
  plot_by = "sample_id",
  colors_use = NULL,
  dot_size = 1,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  significance = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

metrics_dataframe	data.frame contain Cell Ranger QC Metrics (see <a href="#">Read_Metrics_10X</a> ).
plot_by	Grouping factor for the plot. Default is to plot as single group with single point per sample.
colors_use	colors to use for plot if plotting by group. Defaults to RColorBrewer Dark2 palette if less than 8 groups and DiscretePalette_scCustomize(palette = "polychrome") if more than 8.
dot_size	size of the dots plotted if plot_by is not sample_id Default is 1.
x_lab_rotate	logical. Whether to rotate the axes labels on the x-axis. Default is FALSE.
significance	logical. Whether to calculate and plot p-value comparisons when plotting by grouping factor. Default is FALSE.
...	Other variables to pass to ggpubr::stat_compare_means when doing significance testing.



**Value**

A ggplot object

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
Seq_QC_Plot_UMIs(metrics_dataframe = metrics)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

seq_zeros	<i>Create sequence with zeros</i>
-----------	-----------------------------------

---

**Description**

Create sequences of numbers like `seq()` or `seq_len()` but with zeros prefixed to keep numerical order

**Usage**

```
seq_zeros(seq_length, num_zeros = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seq_length</code>	a sequence or numbers of numbers to create sequence. Users can provide sequence (1:XX) or number of values to add in sequence (will be used as second number in <code>seq_len</code> ; 1:XX).
<code>num_zeros</code>	number of zeros to prefix sequence, default is (e.g, 01, 02, 03, ...)

**Value**

vector of numbers in sequence

**References**

Base code from stackoverflow post: <https://stackoverflow.com/a/38825614>

**Examples**

```
# Using sequence  
new_seq <- seq_zeros(seq_length = 1:15, num_zeros = 1)  
new_seq  
  
# Using number  
new_seq <- seq_zeros(seq_length = 15, num_zeros = 1)  
new_seq
```

```
# Sequence with 2 zeros
new_seq <- seq_zeros(seq_length = 1:15, num_zeros = 2)
new_seq
```

---

Setup\_scRNAseq\_Project

*Setup project directory structure*

---

## Description

Create reproducible project directory organization when initiating a new analysis.

## Usage

```
Setup_scRNAseq_Project(
  custom_dir_file = NULL,
  cluster_annotation_path = NULL,
  cluster_annotation_file_name = "cluster_annotation.csv"
)
```

## Arguments

`custom_dir_file`  
file to file containing desired directory structure. Default is NULL and will provide generic built-in directory structure.

`cluster_annotation_path`  
path to place cluster annotation file using [Create\\_Cluster\\_Annotation\\_File](#).

`cluster_annotation_file_name`  
name to use for annotation file if created (optional).

## Value

no return value. Creates system folders.

## Examples

```
## Not run:
# If using built-in directory structure.
Setup_scRNAseq_Project()

## End(Not run)
```

---

Single\_Color\_Palette    *Single Color Palettes for Plotting*

---

**Description**

Selects colors from modified versions of RColorBrewer single colors palettes

**Usage**

```
Single_Color_Palette(pal_color, num_colors = NULL, seed_use = 123)
```

**Arguments**

pal_color	color palette to select (Options are: 'reds', 'blues', 'greens', 'purples', 'oranges', 'grays').
num_colors	set number of colors (max = 7).
seed_use	set seed for reproducibility (default: 123).

**Value**

A vector of colors

**References**

See RColorBrewer for more info on palettes <https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=RColorBrewer>

**Examples**

```
pal <- Single_Color_Palette(pal_color = "reds", num_colors = 7)
PalettePlot(pal= pal)
```

---

SpatialDimPlot\_scCustom

*SpatialDimPlot with modified default settings*

---

**Description**

Creates SpatialDimPlot with some of the settings modified from their Seurat defaults (colors\_use).

**Usage**

```

SpatialDimPlot_scCustom(
  seurat_object,
  group.by = NULL,
  images = NULL,
  colors_use = NULL,
  crop = TRUE,
  label = FALSE,
  label.size = 7,
  label.color = "white",
  label.box = TRUE,
  repel = FALSE,
  ncol = NULL,
  pt.size.factor = 1.6,
  alpha = c(1, 1),
  image.alpha = 1,
  stroke = 0.25,
  interactive = FALSE,
  combine = TRUE,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  color_seed = 123,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of meta.data column to group the data by
<code>images</code>	Name of the images to use in the plot(s)
<code>colors_use</code>	color palette to use for plotting. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with <code>shuffle = TRUE</code> both from <code>DiscretePalette_scCustomize</code> .
<code>crop</code>	Crop the plot in to focus on points plotted. Set to <code>FALSE</code> to show entire background image.
<code>label</code>	Whether to label the clusters
<code>label.size</code>	Sets the size of the labels
<code>label.color</code>	Sets the color of the label text
<code>label.box</code>	Whether to put a box around the label text ( <code>geom_text</code> vs <code>geom_label</code> )
<code>repel</code>	Repels the labels to prevent overlap
<code>ncol</code>	Number of columns if plotting multiple plots
<code>pt.size.factor</code>	Scale the size of the spots.
<code>alpha</code>	Controls opacity of spots. Provide as a vector specifying the min and max for <code>SpatialFeaturePlot</code> . For <code>SpatialDimPlot</code> , provide a single alpha value for each plot.

<code>image.alpha</code>	Adjust the opacity of the background images. Set to 0 to remove.
<code>stroke</code>	Control the width of the border around the spots
<code>interactive</code>	Launch an interactive SpatialDimPlot or SpatialFeaturePlot session, see <a href="#">ISpatialDimPlot</a> or <a href="#">ISpatialFeaturePlot</a> for more details
<code>combine</code>	Combine plots into a single gg object; note that if TRUE; themeing will not work when plotting multiple features/groupings
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">DimPlot</a> .

**Value**

A ggplot object

**References**

Many of the param names and descriptions are from Seurat to facilitate ease of use as this is simply a wrapper to alter some of the default parameters <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat/blob/master/R/visualization.R> (License: GPL-3).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
SpatialDimPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = seurat_object)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Split_Layers	<i>Split Seurat object into layers</i>
--------------	--

---

**Description**

Split Assay5 of Seurat object into layers by variable in meta.data

**Usage**

```
Split_Layers(seurat_object, assay = "RNA", split.by)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>assay</code>	name(s) of assays to convert. Defaults to current active assay.
<code>split.by</code>	Variable in meta.data to use for splitting layers.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# Split object by "treatment"  
obj <- Split_Layers(object = obj, assay = "RNA", split.by = "treatment")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

Split_Vector	<i>Split vector into list</i>
--------------	-------------------------------

---

**Description**

Splits vector into chunks of x sizes

**Usage**

```
Split_Vector(x, chunk_size = NULL, num_chunk = NULL, verbose = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

x	vector to split
chunk_size	size of chunks for vector to be split into, default is NULL. Only valid if num_chunk is NULL.
num_chunk	number of chunks to split the vector into, default is NULL. Only valid if chunk_size is NULL.
verbose	logical, print details of vector and split, default is FALSE.

**Value**

list with vector of X length

**References**

Base code from stackoverflow post: <https://stackoverflow.com/a/3321659/15568251>

**Examples**

```
vector <- c("gene1", "gene2", "gene3", "gene4", "gene5", "gene6")  
vector_list <- Split_Vector(x = vector, chunk_size = 3)
```

---

Stacked\_VlnPlot      *Stacked Violin Plot*

---

## Description

Code for creating stacked violin plot gene expression.

## Usage

```
Stacked_VlnPlot(
  seurat_object,
  features,
  group.by = NULL,
  split.by = NULL,
  idents = NULL,
  x_lab_rotate = FALSE,
  plot_legend = FALSE,
  colors_use = NULL,
  color_seed = 123,
  ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
  plot_spacing = 0.15,
  spacing_unit = "cm",
  vln_linewidth = NULL,
  pt.size = NULL,
  raster = NULL,
  add.noise = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

seurat_object	Seurat object name.
features	Features to plot.
group.by	Group (color) cells in different ways (for example, orig.ident).
split.by	A variable to split the violin plots by,
idents	Which classes to include in the plot (default is all).
x_lab_rotate	logical or numeric. If logical whether to rotate x-axis labels 45 degrees (Default is FALSE). If numeric must be either 45 or 90. Setting 45 is equivalent to setting TRUE.
plot_legend	logical. Adds plot legend containing idents to the returned plot.
colors_use	specify color palette to used in <a href="#">VlnPlot</a> . By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with shuffle = TRUE both from <code>DiscretePalette_scCustomize</code> .
color_seed	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if colors_use = NULL and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.

<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default <code>ggplot2</code> "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>plot_spacing</code>	Numerical value specifying the vertical spacing between each plot in the stack. Default is 0.15 ("cm"). Spacing dependent on unit provided to <code>spacing_unit</code> .
<code>spacing_unit</code>	Unit to use in specifying vertical spacing between plots. Default is "cm".
<code>vln_linewidth</code>	Adjust the linewidth of violin outline. Must be numeric.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting. Default for <code>Stacked_VlnPlot</code> is 0 to avoid issues with rendering so many points in vector form. Alternatively, see <code>raster</code> parameter.
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is <code>NULL</code> which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>add.noise</code>	logical, determine if adding a small noise for plotting (Default is <code>TRUE</code> ).
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <code>VlnPlot</code> .

**Value**

A `ggplot` object

**Author(s)**

Ming Tang (Original Code), Sam Marsh (Wrap single function, added/modified functionality)

**References**

<https://divingintogeneticsandgenomics.rbind.io/post/stacked-violin-plot-for-visualizing-single-cell/>

**See Also**

<https://x.com/tangming2005>

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
Stacked_VlnPlot(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = c("CD3E", "CD8", "GZMB", "MS4A1"),
x_lab_rotate = TRUE)
```



---

`Store_Misc_Info_Seurat`*Store misc data in Seurat object*

---

**Description**

Wrapper function save variety of data types to the `@misc` slot of Seurat object.

**Usage**

```
Store_Misc_Info_Seurat(  
  seurat_object,  
  data_to_store,  
  data_name,  
  list_as_list = FALSE,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>seurat_object</code>	object name.
<code>data_to_store</code>	data to be stored in <code>@misc</code> slot. Can be single piece of data or list. If list of data see <code>list_as_list</code> parameter for control over data storage.
<code>data_name</code>	name to give the entry in <code>@misc</code> slot. Must be of equal length of the number of data items being stored.
<code>list_as_list</code>	logical. If <code>data_to_store</code> is a list, this dictates whether to store in <code>@misc</code> slot as list (TRUE) or whether to store each entry in the list separately (FALSE). Default is FALSE.
<code>overwrite</code>	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing items with the same name. Default is FALSE, meaning that function will abort if item with <code>data_name</code> is present in <code>misc</code> slot.
<code>verbose</code>	logical, whether to print messages when running function, default is TRUE.

**Value**

Seurat Object with new entries in the `@misc` slot.

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)  
clu_pal <- c("red", "green", "blue")  
  
pbmc_small <- Store_Misc_Info_Seurat(seurat_object = pbmc_small, data_to_store = clu_pal,  
  data_name = "rd1_colors")
```

---

Store\_Palette\_Seurat *Store color palette in Seurat object*

---

### Description

Wrapper function around Store\_Misc\_Info\_Seurat to store color palettes.

### Usage

```
Store_Palette_Seurat(  
  seurat_object,  
  palette,  
  palette_name,  
  list_as_list = FALSE,  
  overwrite = FALSE,  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

### Arguments

seurat_object	object name.
palette	vector or list of vectors containing color palettes to store. If list of palettes see list_as_list parameter for control over data storage.
palette_name	name to give the palette(s) in @misc slot. Must be of equal length to the number of data items being stored.
list_as_list	logical. If data_to_store is a list, this dictates whether to store in @misc slot as list (TRUE) or whether to store each entry in the list separately (FALSE). Default is FALSE.
overwrite	Logical. Whether to overwrite existing items with the same name. Default is FALSE, meaning that function will abort if item with data_name is present in misc slot.
verbose	logical, whether to print messages when running function, default is TRUE.

### Value

Seurat Object with new entries in the @misc slot.

### Examples

```
library(Seurat)  
clu_pal <- c("red", "green", "blue")  
  
pbmc_small <- Store_Misc_Info_Seurat(seurat_object = pbmc_small, data_to_store = clu_pal,  
data_name = "rd1_colors")
```

---

Subset_LIGER	<i>Subset LIGER object</i>
--------------	----------------------------

---

### Description

Subset LIGER object by cluster or other meta data variable.

### Usage

```
Subset_LIGER(  
  liger_object,  
  cluster = NULL,  
  cluster_col = "leiden_cluster",  
  ident = NULL,  
  ident_col = NULL,  
  invert = FALSE  
)
```

### Arguments

<code>liger_object</code>	LIGER object name.
<code>cluster</code>	Name(s) of cluster to subset from object.
<code>cluster_col</code>	name of @cellMeta column containing cluster names, default is "leiden_cluster".
<code>ident</code>	variable within <code>ident_col</code> to use in sub-setting object.
<code>ident_col</code>	column in @cellMeta that contains values provided to <code>ident</code> .
<code>invert</code>	logical, whether to subset the inverse of the clusters or ids provided, default is FALSE.

### Value

liger object

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
# subset clusters 3 and 5  
sub_liger <- subset_liger(liger_object = liger_object, cluster = c(3, 5))  
  
# subset control samples from column "Treatment"  
sub_liger <- subset_liger(liger_object = liger_object, ident = "control",  
  ident_col = "Treatment")  
  
# subset control samples from column "Treatment" in clusters 3 and 5  
sub_liger <- subset_liger(liger_object = liger_object, ident = "control",  
  ident_col = "Treatment", cluster = c(3, 5))  
  
# Remove cluster 9
```

```
sub_liger <- subset_liger(liger_object = liger_object, cluster = 9, invert = TRUE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

theme_ggprism_mod	<i>Modified ggprism theme</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------

---

### Description

Modified ggprism theme which restores the legend title.

### Usage

```
theme_ggprism_mod(
  palette = "black_and_white",
  base_size = 14,
  base_family = "sans",
  base_fontface = "bold",
  base_line_size = base_size/20,
  base_rect_size = base_size/20,
  axis_text_angle = 0,
  border = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

palette	string. Palette name, use names(ggprism_data\$themes) to show all valid palette names.
base_size	numeric. Base font size, given in "pt".
base_family	string. Base font family, default is "sans".
base_fontface	string. Base font face, default is "bold".
base_line_size	numeric. Base linewidth for line elements
base_rect_size	numeric. Base linewidth for rect elements
axis_text_angle	integer. Angle of axis text in degrees. One of: 0, 45, 90, 270.
border	logical. Should a border be drawn around the plot? Clipping will occur unless e.g. coord_cartesian(clip = "off") is used.

### Value

Returns a list-like object of class *theme*.

## References

theme is a modified version of theme\_prism from ggprism package <https://github.com/csdaw/ggprism> (License: GPL-3). Param text is from ggprism:theme\_prism() documentation [theme\\_prism](#). Theme adaptation based on ggprism vignette <https://csdaw.github.io/ggprism/articles/themes.html#make-your-own-ggprism-theme-1>.

## Examples

```
# Generate a plot and customize theme
library(ggplot2)
df <- data.frame(x = rnorm(n = 100, mean = 20, sd = 2), y = rbinom(n = 100, size = 100, prob = 0.2))
p <- ggplot(data = df, mapping = aes(x = x, y = y)) + geom_point(mapping = aes(color = 'red'))
p + theme_ggprism_mod()
```

---

Top_Genes_Factor	<i>Extract top loading genes for LIGER factor</i>
------------------	---

---

## Description

Extract vector to the top loading genes for specified LIGER iNMF factor

## Usage

```
Top_Genes_Factor(object, factor = NULL, num_genes = 10, ...)

## S3 method for class 'liger'
Top_Genes_Factor(object, factor = NULL, num_genes = 10, ...)

## S3 method for class 'Seurat'
Top_Genes_Factor(object, factor = NULL, num_genes = 10, reduction, ...)
```

## Arguments

object	object name.
factor	factor number to pull genes from. Set to "all" to return top loading genes from all factors
num_genes	number of top loading genes to return as vector, default is 10.
...	Arguments passed to other methods
reduction	name of reduction containing NMF/iNMF/cNMF data.

## Value

vector of top genes for given factor or data.frame containing top genes across all factors

## Examples

```
## Not run:
top_genes_factor10 <- Top_Genes_Factor(object = object, factor = 1, num_genes = 10)

## End(Not run)

## Not run:
top_genes_factor10 <- Top_Genes_Factor(object = object, factor = 1, num_genes = 10,
reduction = "cNMF")

## End(Not run)
```

---

UnRotate\_X

*Unrotate x axis on VlnPlot*

---

## Description

Shortcut for thematic modification to unrotate the x axis (e.g., for Seurat VlnPlot is rotated by default).

## Usage

```
UnRotate_X(...)
```

## Arguments

... extra arguments passed to `ggplot2::theme()`.

## Value

Returns a list-like object of class *theme*.

## Examples

```
library(Seurat)
p <- VlnPlot(object = pbmc_small, features = "CD3E")
p + UnRotate_X()
```

---

Updated\_HGNC\_Symbols    *Update HGNC Gene Symbols*

---

### Description

Update human gene symbols using data from HGNC. This function will store cached data in package directory using (BiocFileCache). Use of this function requires internet connection on first use (or if setting `update_symbol_data = TRUE`). Subsequent use does not require connection and will pull from cached data.

### Usage

```
Updated_HGNC_Symbols(
  input_data,
  update_symbol_data = NULL,
  case_check_as_warn = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

### Arguments

<code>input_data</code>	Data source containing gene names. Accepted formats are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• character vector</li> <li>• Seurat Object</li> <li>• Expression Matrix: genes as rownames (dgCMatix/dgTMatrix, data.frame, or tibble)</li> <li>• data.frame/tibble: single column with genes in first column.</li> </ul>
<code>update_symbol_data</code>	logical, whether to update cached HGNC data, default is NULL. If NULL BiocFileCache will check and prompt for update if cache is stale. If FALSE the BiocFileCache stale check will be skipped and current cache will be used. If TRUE the BiocFileCache stale check will be skipped and HGNC data will be downloaded.
<code>case_check_as_warn</code>	logical, whether case checking of features should cause abort or only warn, default is FALSE (abort). Set to TRUE if atypical names (i.e. old LOC naming) are present in <code>input_data</code> .
<code>verbose</code>	logical, whether to print results detailing numbers of symbols, found, updated, and not found; default is TRUE.

### Value

data.frame containing columns: `input_features`, `Approved_Symbol` (already approved; output unchanged), `Not_Found_Symbol` (symbol not in HGNC; output unchanged), `Updated_Symbol` (new symbol from HGNC; output updated).

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
new_names <- Updated_HGNC_Symbols(input_data = Seurat_Object)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Updated\_MGI\_Symbols     *Update MGI Gene Symbols*

---

**Description**

Update mouse gene symbols using data from MGI This function will store cached data in package directory using (BiocFileCache). Use of this function requires internet connection on first use (or if setting `update_symbol_data = TRUE`). Subsequent use does not require connection and will pull from cached data.

**Usage**

```
Updated_MGI_Symbols(input_data, update_symbol_data = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>input_data</code>	Data source containing gene names. Accepted formats are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• character vector</li> <li>• Seurat Object</li> <li>• Expression Matrix: genes as rownames (dgCMatix/dgTMatrix, data.frame, or tibble)</li> <li>• data.frame/tibble: single column with genes in first column.</li> </ul>
<code>update_symbol_data</code>	logical, whether to update cached MGI data, default is NULL. If NULL BiocFileCache will check and prompt for update if cache is stale. If FALSE the BiocFileCache stale check will be skipped and current cache will be used. If TRUE the BiocFileCache stale check will be skipped and MGI data will be downloaded.
<code>verbose</code>	logical, whether to print results detailing numbers of symbols, found, updated, and not found; default is TRUE.

**Value**

data.frame containing columns: `input_features`, `Approved_Symbol` (already approved; output unchanged), `Not_Found_Symbol` (symbol not in MGI; output unchanged), `Updated_Symbol` (new symbol from MGI; output updated).



## Examples

```
## Not run:  
new_names <- Updated_MGI_Symbols(input_data = Seurat_Object)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

VariableFeaturePlot\_scCustom  
*Custom Labeled Variable Features Plot*

---

## Description

Creates variable features plot with N number of features already labeled by default.

## Usage

```
VariableFeaturePlot_scCustom(  
  seurat_object,  
  num_features = 10,  
  custom_features = NULL,  
  label = TRUE,  
  pt.size = 1,  
  colors_use = c("black", "red"),  
  repel = TRUE,  
  y_axis_log = FALSE,  
  assay = NULL,  
  selection.method = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

## Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>num_features</code>	Number of top variable features to highlight by color/label.
<code>custom_features</code>	A vector of custom feature names to label on plot instead of labeling top variable genes.
<code>label</code>	logical. Whether to label the top features. Default is TRUE.
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>colors_use</code>	colors to use for plotting. Default is "black" and "red".
<code>repel</code>	logical (default TRUE). Whether or not to repel the feature labels on plot.
<code>y_axis_log</code>	logical. Whether to change y axis to log10 scale (Default is FALSE).
<code>assay</code>	Assay to pull variable features from.

`selection.method` If more than one method is used to calculate variable features, specify which method to use for plotting. See `selection.method` parameter in `VariableFeaturePlot` for list of options.

`...` Extra parameters passed to `VariableFeaturePlot`.

**Value**

A `ggplot` object

**Examples**

```
library(Seurat)
VariableFeaturePlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, num_features = 10)
```

---

Variable\_Features\_ALL\_LIGER

*Perform variable gene selection over whole dataset*

---

**Description**

Performs variable gene selection for LIGER object across the entire object instead of by dataset and then taking union.

**Usage**

```
Variable_Features_ALL_LIGER(
  liger_object,
  num_genes = NULL,
  var.thresh = 0.3,
  alpha.thresh = 0.99,
  tol = 1e-04,
  do.plot = FALSE,
  pt.size = 1.5,
  chunk = 1000
)
```

**Arguments**

`liger_object` LIGER object name.

`num_genes` Number of genes to find. Optimizes the value of `var.thresh` to get this number of genes, (Default is `NULL`).

`var.thresh` Variance threshold. Main threshold used to identify variable genes. Genes with expression variance greater than threshold (relative to mean) are selected. (higher threshold -> fewer selected genes).

alpha.thresh	Alpha threshold. Controls upper bound for expected mean gene expression (lower threshold -> higher upper bound). (default 0.99)
tol	Tolerance to use for optimization if num.genes values passed in (default 0.0001). Only applicable for rliger < 2.0.0.
do.plot	Display log plot of gene variance vs. gene expression. Selected genes are plotted in green. (Default FALSE)
pt.size	Point size for plot.
chunk	size of chunks in hdf5 file. (Default 1000)

### Value

A LIGER Object with variable genes in correct slot.

### References

Matching function parameter text descriptions are taken from `rliger::selectGenes` which is called by this function after creating new temporary object/dataset. <https://github.com/welch-lab/liger>. (License: GPL-3).

### Examples

```
## Not run:  
liger_obj <- Variable_Features_ALL_LIGER(liger_object = liger_obj, num_genes = 2000)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high  
*Viridis Shortcuts*

---

### Description

Quick shortcuts to access viridis palettes

### Usage

```
viridis_plasma_dark_high  
  
viridis_plasma_light_high  
  
viridis_inferno_dark_high  
  
viridis_inferno_light_high  
  
viridis_magma_dark_high
```

```
viridis_magma_light_high
```

```
viridis_dark_high
```

```
viridis_light_high
```

**Format**

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

An object of class character of length 250.

**Value**

A color palette for plotting

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
FeaturePlot_scCustom(object = seurat_object, features = "Cx3cr1",  
  colors_use = viridis_plasma_dark_high, na_color = "lightgray")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

VlnPlot\_scCustom

*VlnPlot with modified default settings*

---

**Description**

Creates DimPlot with some of the settings modified from their Seurat defaults (colors\_use, shuffle, label).

**Usage**

```
VlnPlot_scCustom(  
  seurat_object,  
  features,  
  colors_use = NULL,  
  pt.size = NULL,  
  group.by = NULL,
```

```

split.by = NULL,
plot_median = FALSE,
plot_boxplot = FALSE,
median_size = 15,
idents = NULL,
num_columns = NULL,
raster = NULL,
add.noise = TRUE,
ggplot_default_colors = FALSE,
color_seed = 123,
...
)

```

### Arguments

<code>seurat_object</code>	Seurat object name.
<code>features</code>	Feature(s) to plot.
<code>colors_use</code>	color palette to use for plotting. By default if number of levels plotted is less than or equal to 36 it will use "polychrome" and if greater than 36 will use "varibow" with <code>shuffle = TRUE</code> both from <code>DiscretePalette_scCustomize</code> .
<code>pt.size</code>	Adjust point size for plotting.
<code>group.by</code>	Name of one or more metadata columns to group (color) cells by (for example, <code>orig.ident</code> ); default is the current <code>active.ident</code> of the object.
<code>split.by</code>	Feature to split plots by (i.e. "orig.ident").
<code>plot_median</code>	logical, whether to plot median for each ident on the plot (Default is FALSE).
<code>plot_boxplot</code>	logical, whether to plot boxplot inside of violin (Default is FALSE).
<code>median_size</code>	Shape size for the median is plotted.
<code>idents</code>	Which classes to include in the plot (default is all).
<code>num_columns</code>	Number of columns in plot layout. Only valid if <code>split.by != NULL</code> .
<code>raster</code>	Convert points to raster format. Default is NULL which will rasterize by default if greater than 200,000 total points plotted (# Cells x # of features).
<code>add.noise</code>	logical, determine if adding a small noise for plotting (Default is TRUE).
<code>ggplot_default_colors</code>	logical. If <code>colors_use = NULL</code> , Whether or not to return plot using default ggplot2 "hue" palette instead of default "polychrome" or "varibow" palettes.
<code>color_seed</code>	random seed for the "varibow" palette shuffle if <code>colors_use = NULL</code> and number of groups plotted is greater than 36. Default = 123.
<code>...</code>	Extra parameters passed to <a href="#">VlnPlot</a> .

### Value

A ggplot object

## References

Many of the param names and descriptions are from Seurat to facilitate ease of use as this is simply a wrapper to alter some of the default parameters <https://github.com/satijalab/seurat/blob/master/R/visualization.R> (License: GPL-3).

## Examples

```
library(Seurat)
VlnPlot_scCustom(seurat_object = pbmc_small, features = "CD3E")
```

---

WhichCells.liger	<i>Extract Cells for particular identity</i>
------------------	--

---

## Description

Extract all cell barcodes for a specific identity

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'liger'
WhichCells(
  object,
  idents = NULL,
  ident_col = NULL,
  by_dataset = FALSE,
  invert = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

object	LIGER object name.
idents	identities to extract cell barcodes.
ident_col	name of meta data column to use when subsetting cells by identity values. Default is NULL, which will use the objects default clustering as the ident_col.
by_dataset	logical, whether to return vector with cell barcodes for all idents in or to return list (1 entry per dataset with vector of cells) (default is FALSE; return vector).
invert	logical, invert the selection of cells (default is FALSE).
...	Arguments passed to other methods

## Value

vector or list depending on by\_dataset parameter

**Examples**

```
## Not run:  
# Extract cells from ident =1 in current default clustering  
ident1_cells <- WhichCells(object = liger_object, idents = 1)  
  
# Extract all cells from "stim" treatment from object  
stim_cells <- WhichCells(object = liger_object, idents = "stim", ident_col = "Treatment")  
  
## End(Not run)
```

# Index

- \* **barcode\_util**
  - Change\_Delim\_All, [38](#)
  - Change\_Delim\_Prefix, [39](#)
  - Change\_Delim\_Suffix, [40](#)
  - Replace\_Suffix, [168](#)
- \* **check\_util**
  - Case\_Check, [31](#)
  - CheckMatrix\_scCustom, [40](#)
  - Feature\_Present, [82](#)
  - Meta\_Numeric, [109](#)
  - Meta\_Present, [110](#)
  - Reduction>Loading\_Present, [164](#)
- \* **datasets**
  - ensembl\_exAM\_list, [65](#)
  - ensembl\_hemo\_id, [65](#)
  - ensembl\_ieg\_list, [66](#)
  - ensembl\_lncRNA\_id, [67](#)
  - ensembl\_malat1\_list, [67](#)
  - ensembl\_mito\_id, [68](#)
  - ensembl\_ribo\_id, [68](#)
  - exAM\_gene\_list, [69](#)
  - ieg\_gene\_list, [87](#)
  - lncRNA\_gene\_list, [102](#)
  - msigdb\_qc\_ensembl\_list, [112](#)
  - msigdb\_qc\_gene\_list, [114](#)
  - viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high, [203](#)
- \* **data**
  - ensembl\_exAM\_list, [65](#)
  - ensembl\_hemo\_id, [65](#)
  - ensembl\_ieg\_list, [66](#)
  - ensembl\_lncRNA\_id, [67](#)
  - ensembl\_malat1\_list, [67](#)
  - ensembl\_mito\_id, [68](#)
  - ensembl\_ribo\_id, [68](#)
  - exAM\_gene\_list, [69](#)
  - ieg\_gene\_list, [87](#)
  - lncRNA\_gene\_list, [102](#)
  - msigdb\_qc\_ensembl\_list, [112](#)
  - msigdb\_qc\_gene\_list, [114](#)
- \* **get\_set\_util**
  - Add\_Alt\_Feature\_ID, [6](#)
  - Add\_Sample\_Meta, [21](#)
  - Extract\_Sample\_Meta, [72](#)
  - Fetch\_Meta, [83](#)
  - Map\_New\_Meta, [103](#)
  - Meta\_Remove\_Seurat, [111](#)
  - Random\_Cells\_Downsampling, [149](#)
  - Rename\_Clusters, [167](#)
  - Store\_Misc\_Info\_Seurat, [193](#)
  - Store\_Palette\_Seurat, [194](#)
- \* **iterative\_plotting**
  - Iterate\_Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot, [89](#)
  - Iterate\_DimPlot\_bySample, [90](#)
  - Iterate\_FeaturePlot\_scCustom, [92](#)
  - Iterate\_Meta\_Highlight\_Plot, [94](#)
  - Iterate\_PC>Loading\_Plots, [95](#)
  - Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Custom, [96](#)
  - Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Joint, [98](#)
  - Iterate\_VlnPlot\_scCustom, [99](#)
- \* **liger\_object\_util**
  - Add\_Cell\_Complexity, [8](#)
  - Add\_Mito\_Ribo, [18](#)
  - Cells.liger, [35](#)
  - Cells\_by\_Identities\_LIGER, [35](#)
  - Dataset\_Size\_LIGER, [53](#)
  - Embeddings.liger, [64](#)
  - Features.liger, [79](#)
  - Fetch\_Meta, [83](#)
  - Find\_Factor\_Cor, [84](#)
  - Get\_Reference\_LIGER, [84](#)
  - Idents.liger, [86](#)
  - Subset\_LIGER, [195](#)
  - Top\_Genes\_Factor, [197](#)
  - Variable\_Features\_ALL\_LIGER, [202](#)
  - WhichCells.liger, [206](#)
- \* **liger\_plotting**
  - DimPlot\_LIGER, [55](#)
  - Factor\_Cor\_Plot, [74](#)



- plotFactors\_scCustom, 118
- \* **marker\_annotation\_util**
  - Add\_Pct\_Diff, 20
  - Create\_Cluster\_Annotation\_File, 52
  - Extract\_Top\_Markers, 73
  - Pull\_Cluster\_Annotation, 131
  - Rename\_Clusters, 167
  - Top\_Genes\_Factor, 197
- \* **misc\_util**
  - Merge\_Seurat\_List, 105
  - ReFilter\_SeuratObject, 165
  - seq\_zeros, 185
  - Split\_Vector, 190
  - Updated\_HGNC\_Symbols, 199
  - Updated\_MGI\_Symbols, 200
- \* **object\_conversion**
  - as.anndata, 24
  - as.LIGER, 26
  - as.Seurat.liger, 28
  - Convert\_Assay, 48
  - Split\_Layers, 189
- \* **object\_qc\_plotting**
  - QC\_Histogram, 132
  - QC\_Plot\_GenevsFeature, 144
  - QC\_Plot\_UMIvsFeature, 145
  - QC\_Plot\_UMIvsGene, 147
  - QC\_Plots\_Combined\_Vln, 133
  - QC\_Plots\_Complexity, 135
  - QC\_Plots\_Feature, 137
  - QC\_Plots\_Genes, 139
  - QC\_Plots\_Mito, 140
  - QC\_Plots\_UMIs, 142
- \* **organization\_util**
  - Copy\_From\_GCP, 49
  - Copy\_To\_GCP, 50
  - Setup\_scRNAseq\_Project, 186
- \* **other\_seurat\_plotting**
  - Plot\_Density\_Custom, 121
  - Plot\_Density\_Joint\_Only, 123
- \* **palettes**
  - ColorBlind\_Pal, 48
  - Dark2\_Pal, 53
  - DiscretePalette\_scCustomize, 60
  - Hue\_Pal, 85
  - JCO\_Four, 101
  - NavyAndOrange, 115
  - PalettePlot, 116
  - scCustomize\_Palette, 169
  - Single\_Color\_Palette, 187
  - viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high, 203
- \* **qc\_util**
  - Add\_Cell\_Complexity, 8
  - Add\_Cell\_QC\_Metrics, 9
  - Add\_CellBender\_Diff, 7
  - Add\_Hemo, 13
  - Add\_MALAT1\_Threshold, 15
  - Add\_Mito\_Ribo, 18
  - Add\_Top\_Gene\_Pct, 22
  - exAM\_Scoring, 70
- \* **read\_&\_write**
  - Create\_10X\_H5, 50
  - Create\_CellBender\_Merged\_Seurat, 51
  - Pull\_Directory\_List, 132
  - Read10X\_GEO, 150
  - Read10X\_h5\_GEO, 152
  - Read10X\_h5\_Multi\_Directory, 153
  - Read10X\_Multi\_Directory, 155
  - Read\_Add\_cNMF, 156
  - Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Mat, 157
  - Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Multi\_Directory, 158
  - Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Multi\_File, 160
  - Read\_GEO\_Delim, 161
  - Read\_Metrics\_10X, 163
  - Read\_Metrics\_CellBender, 164
- \* **read\_merge\_util**
  - Extract\_Modality, 71
  - Merge\_Sparse\_Data\_All, 106
  - Merge\_Sparse\_Multimodal\_All, 107
- \* **seq\_qc\_plotting\_alignment**
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Antisense, 171
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Exonic, 173
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genome, 175
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intergenic, 176
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intronic, 177
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Transcriptome, 183
- \* **seq\_qc\_plotting\_basic**
  - Barcode\_Plot, 29
  - Iterate\_Barcode\_Rank\_Plot, 87
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genes, 174
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Number\_Cells, 178
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_in\_Cells, 179
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_per\_Cell, 180
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Saturation, 181
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Total\_Genes, 182

- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_UMIs, 184
- \* **seq\_qc\_plotting\_layout**
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Alignment\_Combined, 170
  - Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Basic\_Combined, 172
- \* **seurat\_plotting**
  - Cell\_Highlight\_Plot, 37
  - Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot, 45
  - Clustered\_DotPlot, 41
  - DimPlot\_All\_Samples, 54
  - DimPlot\_scCustom, 58
  - DotPlot\_scCustom, 61
  - ElbowPlot\_scCustom, 63
  - FeaturePlot\_DualAssay, 76
  - FeaturePlot\_scCustom, 77
  - FeatureScatter\_scCustom, 80
  - Meta\_Highlight\_Plot, 108
  - PC\_Plotting, 116
  - SpatialDimPlot\_scCustom, 187
  - Stacked\_VlnPlot, 191
  - VariableFeaturePlot\_scCustom, 201
  - VlnPlot\_scCustom, 204
- \* **stats\_plotting**
  - CellBender\_Diff\_Plot, 32
  - Plot\_Cells\_per\_Sample, 120
  - Plot\_Median\_Genes, 124
  - Plot\_Median\_Mito, 125
  - Plot\_Median\_Other, 126
  - Plot\_Median\_UMIs, 127
  - Proportion\_Plot, 128
  - Proportion\_Plot\_per\_Sample, 130
- \* **stats**
  - CellBender\_Feature\_Diff, 34
  - Cells\_per\_Sample, 36
  - Cluster\_Stats\_All\_Samples, 47
  - MAD\_Stats, 102
  - Median\_Stats, 104
  - Percent\_Expressing, 117
- \* **themes**
  - Blank\_Theme, 30
  - Move\_Legend, 112
  - theme\_ggprism\_mod, 196
  - UnRotate\_X, 198
- Add\_Alt\_Feature\_ID, 6
- Add\_Cell\_Complexity, 8
- Add\_Cell\_QC\_Metrics, 9
- Add\_CellBender\_Diff, 7
- Add\_Hemo, 13
- Add\_MALAT1\_Threshold, 15
- Add\_Mito\_Ribo, 18
- Add\_Pct\_Diff, 20
- Add\_Sample\_Meta, 21
- Add\_Top\_Gene\_Pct, 22
- as.anndata, 24
- as.LIGER, 26
- as.Seurat.liger, 28
- Barcode\_Plot, 29
- barcodeRanks, 30
- Blank\_Theme, 30
- Case\_Check, 31
- Cell\_Highlight\_Plot, 37
- CellBender\_Diff\_Plot, 32
- CellBender\_Feature\_Diff, 32, 34
- CellCycleScoring, 11
- Cells.liger, 35
- Cells\_by\_Identities\_LIGER, 35
- Cells\_per\_Sample, 36
- Change\_Delim\_All, 38
- Change\_Delim\_Prefix, 39
- Change\_Delim\_Suffix, 40
- CheckMatrix\_scCustom, 40
- Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot, 45
- Cluster\_Stats\_All\_Samples, 47
- Clustered\_DotPlot, 41
- ColorBlind\_Pal, 48
- Convert\_Assay, 29, 48
- Copy\_From\_GCP, 49
- Copy\_To\_GCP, 50
- Create\_10X\_H5, 50
- Create\_CellBender\_Merged\_Seurat, 51, 76
- Create\_Cluster\_Annotation\_File, 52, 186
- CreateSeuratObject, 52, 165
- Dark2\_Pal, 53
- Dataset\_Size\_LIGER, 53
- DimPlot, 38, 46, 55, 60, 90, 91, 95, 109, 189
- DimPlot\_All\_Samples, 54
- DimPlot\_LIGER, 55
- DimPlot\_scCustom, 58
- DiscretePalette\_scCustomize, 56, 60, 119
- DotPlot, 62, 118
- DotPlot\_scCustom, 61
- ElbowPlot\_scCustom, 63
- Embeddings.liger, 64

- ensembl\_exAM\_list, 65
- ensembl\_hemo\_id, 65
- ensembl\_ieg\_list, 66
- ensembl\_lncRNA\_id, 67
- ensembl\_malatl1\_list, 67
- ensembl\_mito\_id, 68
- ensembl\_ribo\_id, 68
- exAM\_gene\_list, 69
- exAM\_Scoring, 70
- Extract\_Modality, 71
- Extract\_Sample\_Meta, 72
- Extract\_Top\_Markers, 73
  
- Factor\_Cor\_Plot, 74
- Feature\_Present, 82
- FeaturePlot, 77, 79, 93
- FeaturePlot\_DualAssay, 76
- FeaturePlot\_scCustom, 77
- Features.liger, 79
- FeatureScatter, 81, 145, 147–149
- FeatureScatter\_scCustom, 80
- Fetch\_Meta, 83
- Find\_Factor\_Cor, 84
- FindAllMarkers, 20, 73, 74
- FindMarkers, 20
  
- geom\_text\_repel, 33
- Get\_Reference\_LIGER, 84
  
- Hue\_Pal, 85
  
- Idents.liger, 86
- Idents<-liger (Idents.liger), 86
- ieg\_gene\_list, 87
- ISpatialDimPlot, 189
- ISpatialFeaturePlot, 189
- Iterate\_Barcode\_Rank\_Plot, 87
- Iterate\_Cluster\_Highlight\_Plot, 89
- Iterate\_DimPlot\_bySample, 90
- Iterate\_FeaturePlot\_scCustom, 92
- Iterate\_Meta\_Highlight\_Plot, 94
- Iterate\_PC>Loading\_Plots, 95
- Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Custom, 96
- Iterate\_Plot\_Density\_Joint, 98
- Iterate\_VlnPlot\_scCustom, 99
  
- JCO\_Four, 101
  
- LabelPoints, 33
- lncRNA\_gene\_list, 102
  
- MAD\_Stats, 102
- Map\_New\_Meta, 103
- mapCellMeta, 104
- Median\_Stats, 72, 104
- merge, 105
- Merge\_Seurat\_List, 105
- Merge\_Sparse\_Data\_All, 106
- Merge\_Sparse\_Multimodal\_All, 107
- Meta\_Highlight\_Plot, 108
- Meta\_Numeric, 109
- Meta\_Present, 110
- Meta\_Remove\_Seurat, 111
- Move\_Legend, 112
- msigdb\_qc\_ensembl\_list, 112
- msigdb\_qc\_gene\_list, 114
  
- NavyAndOrange, 115
  
- PalettePlot, 116
- patchwork, 79
- PC\_Plotting, 116
- PCHeatmap, 96, 117
- Percent\_Expressing, 117
- Plot\_Cells\_per\_Sample, 120
- plot\_density, 97, 99, 122, 123
- Plot\_Density\_Custom, 121
- Plot\_Density\_Joint\_Only, 123
- Plot\_Median\_Genes, 124
- Plot\_Median\_Mito, 125
- Plot\_Median\_Other, 126
- Plot\_Median\_UMIs, 127
- plotFactors\_scCustom, 118
- Proportion\_Plot, 128
- Proportion\_Plot\_per\_Sample, 130
- Pull\_Cluster\_Annotation, 131
- Pull\_Directory\_List, 132
  
- QC\_Histogram, 132
- QC\_Plot\_GenevsFeature, 144
- QC\_Plot\_UMIvsFeature, 145
- QC\_Plot\_UMIvsGene, 147
- QC\_Plots\_Combined\_Vln, 133
- QC\_Plots\_Complexity, 135
- QC\_Plots\_Feature, 137
- QC\_Plots\_Genes, 139
- QC\_Plots\_Mito, 140
- QC\_Plots\_UMIs, 142
  
- Random\_Cells\_Downsample, 149

- Read10X, [155](#)
- Read10X\_GEO, [150](#)
- Read10X\_h5, [153](#), [154](#)
- Read10X\_h5\_GEO, [152](#)
- Read10X\_h5\_Multi\_Directory, [153](#)
- Read10X\_Multi\_Directory, [155](#)
- Read\_Add\_cNMF, [156](#)
- Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Mat, [157](#), [159](#), [161](#)
- Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Multi\_Directory, [158](#)
- Read\_CellBender\_h5\_Multi\_File, [160](#)
- Read\_GEO\_Delim, [161](#)
- Read\_Metrics\_10X, [163](#), [170–184](#)
- Read\_Metrics\_CellBender, [164](#)
- Reduction\_Loading\_Present, [164](#)
- ReFilter\_SeuratObject, [165](#)
- Rename\_Clusters, [86](#), [167](#)
- Replace\_Suffix, [154](#), [159](#), [168](#)
- scCustomize\_Palette, [169](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Alignment\_Combined, [170](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Antisense, [171](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Basic\_Combined, [172](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Exonic, [173](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genes, [174](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Genome, [175](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intergenic, [176](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Intronic, [177](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Number\_Cells, [178](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_in\_Cells, [179](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Reads\_per\_Cell, [180](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Saturation, [181](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Total\_Genes, [182](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_Transcriptome, [183](#)
- Seq\_QC\_Plot\_UMIs, [184](#)
- seq\_zeros, [185](#)
- Setup\_scRNAseq\_Project, [186](#)
- Single\_Color\_Palette, [187](#)
- SpatialDimPlot\_scCustom, [187](#)
- Split\_Layers, [189](#)
- Split\_Vector, [190](#)
- Stacked\_VlnPlot, [191](#)
- Store\_Misc\_Info\_Seurat, [193](#)
- Store\_Palette\_Seurat, [194](#)
- Subset\_LIGER, [195](#)
- theme\_ggprism\_mod, [196](#)
- theme\_prism, [197](#)
- Top\_Genes\_Factor, [197](#)
- UnRotate\_X, [198](#)
- Updated\_HGNC\_Symbols, [199](#)
- Updated\_MGI\_Symbols, [200](#)
- Variable\_Features\_ALL\_LIGER, [202](#)
- VariableFeaturePlot, [202](#)
- VariableFeaturePlot\_scCustom, [201](#)
- viridis\_dark\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_inferno\_dark\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_inferno\_light\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_light\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_magma\_dark\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_magma\_light\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high, [203](#)
- viridis\_plasma\_light\_high
  - (viridis\_plasma\_dark\_high), [203](#)
- VizDimLoadings, [96](#), [117](#)
- VlnPlot, [101](#), [135](#), [136](#), [138](#), [140](#), [141](#), [143](#), [191](#), [192](#), [205](#)
- VlnPlot\_scCustom, [204](#)
- WhichCells.liger, [206](#)